#### Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 810T/811T/813T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the SoftBank 810T/811T/813T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 810T/811T/813T handset is compatible with the 3G and GSM systems.

#### Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

### What's in the Box

#### 810T

Handset

Battery Pack (TSBAE1)

Battery Cover

• AC Charger (TSCS01)

User Guide

Guide for Advanced Simple Mode (Japanese only)

• First Step Guide (Japanese only)

• BeatJam 2007 for 810T/811T/813T Guide Book (Japanese only)

Utility Software for 810T/811T/813T (CD-ROM)\*1\*2

#### **811T**

Handset

Battery Pack (TSBAE1)

Battery Cover

AC Charger (TSCS01)

User Guide

• Guide for Advanced Simple Mode (Japanese only)

• First Step Guide (Japanese only)

• BeatJam 2007 for 810T/811T/813T Guide Book (Japanese only)

• Utility Software for 810T/811T/813T (CD-ROM)\*1\*2 microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card Adapter\*1

- Stereo Earphones (TSLAF2)
  - microSD<sup>™</sup> Memory Card\*1
- 813T
  - Handset

Battery Pack (TSBAE1)

Battery Cover

AC Charger (TSCS01)

User Guide

- First Step Guide (Japanese only)
- BeatJam 2007 for 810T/811T/813T Guide Book (Japanese only)

• Utility Software for 810T/811T/813T (CD-ROM)\*1\*2

- For information about optional items, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- MicroSD™ memory card is not included in the 810T/813T packages. Purchase a microSD™ memory card to use memory card functions.
- In this manual, microSD<sup>™</sup> memory card is referred to as "memory card".
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

<sup>\*1</sup> Complimentary sample not available for purchase

<sup>\*2</sup> Upgrades or updates of included utility software may become available on the SoftBank Website (www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of utility applications and download as required.

### **Contents**

About This Manual	xiv
Safety Precautions	xvi
Pictograph Descriptions	xvi
Symbol Descriptions	xvi
Limitation of Liability	xvii
General Notes	xxviii
Using Your Handset	xxviii
Inside Vehicles	xxix
Aboard Aircraft	xxix
Handling Basics	xxix
Functional Limitations	xxx
Mobile Camera	xxx
Mobile Light & External Light	
Copyrights	xxxi
Right of Portrait	xxxi
Federal Communication Commission Statement	xxxi
Trademarks and Patents	xxxiv
SAR	xxxvii
FCC RF Exposure Information	xxxvii
European RF Exposure Information	xxxvii

### 1 Getting Started

JSIM Card	1-1
About the USIM Card	1-
Inserting & Removing the USIM Card	1-2
JSIM PINs	1-3
PIN1	1-3

PIN2	1-3
PIN Lock & PUK Codes	1-3
Handset Parts & Functions	1-4
Handset	1-4
Display Indicators	1-6
External Display Indicators	1-8
Information Prompt	1-9
Battery & Charger	1-10
Getting Started	1-10
Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack	1-12
Charging with the AC Charger	1-12
Charging with the Desktop Cradle (Optional)	1-13
Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)	1-13
Turning Handset Power On/Off	1-14
Retrieving Network Information	1-15
Date & Time	1-15
Accessing Functions from Main Menu	1-16
Main Menu View	1-18
Original Main Menu	1-19
Selecting Items by Using the Keypad	1-19
Codes	1-20
Security Code	1-20
Center Access Code	1-20
Call Barring Service Code	1-20
Internet Security Code	1-20

# 2 Basic Operations

Making a Call2-1
Making an International Call from Japan2-1

Caller ID	2-2
Redialing	2-2
Answering a Call	2-3
When You Cannot Answer Immediately	2-3
Placing an Incoming Call on Hold	2-3
Recording a Message to Answer Phone	2-4
Playing Recorded Messages	2-4
Deleting Recorded Messages	2-4
Rejecting a Call	2-5
Engaged Call Operations	2-5
Adjusting Earpiece Volume	2-5
Recording Other Party's Voice	2-5
Number Memo	2-6
Switching to Handsfree Operation	2-6
Call Log	2-6
Viewing Dialed Numbers	2-6
Viewing Received Calls	2-7
Setting Call Log Lock	2-8
Viewing Call Time	2-8
Viewing Call Costs	2-9
Setting Cost Limit	2-9
Owner Information	2-10
Viewing Owner Information during a Call	2-10
Setting/Canceling Manner Mode	2-10
Setting/Canceling Offline Mode	2-11
International Roaming	2-11
Setting the Operator	2-11
Adding an Operator	2-12
Set Priority For Operator Selection	2-12
Setting the System Mode (3G/GSM)	2-12

# 3 Text Entry

About Text Entry	3-1
Switching Text Entry Modes	3-1
Key Assignment (Standard Mode)	3-2
Entering Characters	3-3
Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	
Text Conversion Functions	
Using Word Predictions	3-9
Adding a Word to the User Dictionary	3-11
Editing Text	3-12
Editing Entered Text	3-12
Copy/Cut/Paste	3-12
Undo	
Insert	3-13
Additional Functions	3-14

# 4 Phone Book

aving to Phone Book	4-1
Adding a New Entry	4-2
Setting a Picture	4-2
Setting the Ringtone & Other Options	4-3
Setting Location Information	4-4
Setting Other Information	4-4
Adding an Entry from Call Log	4-5
Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries	4-5

Setting Groups	4-5	Adjusting the Speaker Volume	5-2
Group Names and Icons	4-5	Muting Microphone	5-2
Group Options	4-6	Switching between the Earpiece & Speaker	5-2
Using Phone Book	4-7	Using Zoom	5-3
Switching Phone Books	4-7	Switching between the Main Camera and Sub Camera	5-3
Phone Book Search Modes		Switching Screen Display	5-3
Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries	4-8	Changing the Image Quality	5-3
Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries	4-9	Changing the Alternative Image	5-3
Editing Phone Book Entries	4-9	Sending a Picture	5-4
Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-10	Video Call Settings	5-4
Owner Information	4-10	Setting the Alternative Image	5-4
Adding Information	4-10	Setting Self-view Confirmation	5-4
Using Your Location Information	4-10	Setting the Image Quality	5-4
Using Speed Calling to Make Calls	4-11	Setting Auto Answer for Video Calls	5-4
Setting Phone Book	4-11	Setting Mute	5-5
Setting the Default Storage Place	4-11	Setting the Speaker for Video Calls	5-5
Prohibiting Use of Phone Book	4-11	Setting Hold Image	5-6
S! Address Book	4-12		
Setting User ID and Password	4-13	6 Circle Talk 811T/813T	
Synchronizing Phone Book	4-14	• Circle runk	
Setting Synchronization	4-14	Circle Talk Basics	6-1
Checking Synchronization Log	4-15	Making a Circle Talk Call	6-2
		Answering a Circle Talk Call	6-3
5 Video Call		Circle Talk Operations	6-3
5 11000 Cum		Contacting Another Member	6-3
About Video Calls	5-1	Adjusting the Earpiece Volume	6-3
Indicators	5-1	Switching Sound Output	6-3
Making a Video Call	5-1	Circle Talk Members List	6-4
Answering a Video Call	5-2	Creating a Circle Talk Members List	6-4

Engaged Video Call Operations.....5-2

Editing a Group Name......6-5

Editing Group Member Information	6-5	Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code	7-12
Deleting Entries from Circle Talk Members List	6-6	Picture & Video Settings	
		Settings for Taking Pictures	7-13
7 Camera		Settings for Recording Videos	7-14
		Settings for Pictures & Videos	7-15
About the Camera		Preview Setting	
Precautions		Previewing a Picture	7-18
Display		Previewing a Video	7-18
Common Operations on Finder Window		Send Functions	7-19
Pictures		Sending via Mail	7-19
Picture Modes	7-5	Sending via Infrared Communication	7-19
Taking a Picture	7-5	Editing a Picture	7-19
Setting Pictures for Phone Book	7-6	Changing the Picture Size	7-19
Functions for Taking Pictures	7-7	Picture Effects	7-20
Setting Camera Modes	7-7	Adding a Frame	7-20
Night Mode	7-7	Adding a Stamp	7-21
Multi Shots	7-7	Adding Text	7-21
Frame Setting	7-8	Rotating a Picture	7-22
Videos	7-8	Compounding Pictures	7-22
Video Modes	7-8	Mixing Pictures to Create Wallpaper	7-22
Recording a Video	7-9		
Deleting a Video	7-10	8 Media Player	
Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern	7-10	o media i layer	
Functions for Recording Videos	7-10	About Media Player	8-1
Setting Record Modes	7-10	Playback Window	8-1
Recording a Video without Sound	7-10	Playing Music & Videos	8-2
Setting the Video Compression Method	7-11	Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback	8-3
QR Code	7-11	Operations during Playback	8-3
Scanning a QR Code	7-11	Using Playlists	8-4
Checking Scanned Data	7-12	Creating a Playlist	8-4

Playing a Playlist	8-5
Editing a Playlist	8-5
Accessing Recently Played Files	8-6
Downloading Music and Video Files	8-6
Streaming	8-6
Other Operations & Settings	8-7
Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist	8-7
Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist	8-7
Switching Play Modes	8-7
Using Search Time	8-8
Setting the Surround	8-8
Setting the Equalizer	8-8
Setting the Voice Cancel	8-8
Sending Files	8-8
Viewing Property	8-9
Switching to Background Playback	8-9
Music Player	8-9
Playback Window	8-9
Activating Music Player	8-10
Operations during Playback	8-10
Using the Music Player Menu 811T	8-11

### 9 Memory Card

About Memory Card	9-1
Inserting a Memory Card	
Removing a Memory Card	9-1
Using a Memory Card	9-2
Memory Card Configuration	9-2
Formatting a Memory Card	

Checking Stored Files	.9-3
Confirming Memory Card Usage Status	.9-3

# 10 Data Folder

Data Folder	10-1
Structure of Data Folder	10-1
Files Storable in Data Folder	10-2
Using Files & Folders	10-3
Opening Files	10-3
Changing the View Format of Data Folder	10-7
Displaying the Memory Usage Status	10-7
Displaying the File Properties	10-7
Using Picture Files	10-8
Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files	
Using vObjects	10-9
About vObjects	
Creating a vObject	10-9
Importing a vObject into a Function	10-9
Editing Files & Folders	10-10
Adding Folders	10-10
Changing Folder/File Name	10-10
Deleting Folders/Files	10-10
Moving Folders	10-11
Moving Files	10-11
Copying Folders	10-12
Copying Files	10-12
Setting Folder Security	
Other Functions	10-13

#### 11 File Transfer Rejecting Incoming Calls......12-12 Infrared......11-1 Using Infrared ......11-1 Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List ......12-13 Caller ID Setting ......12-13 Using USB ......11-4 Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID......12-13 Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card .......11-5 Memory Settings ...... 12-14 Settings External Device Settings......12-14 Sound Settings......12-1 Switching Manner Modes......12-1 13 Security Settings Display Settings......12-5 Changing the Security Code......13-1 Changing PIN Codes ......13-1 Font Settings 12-8 Setting Ku-man for Standby......12-8 Setting Secret Mode ......13-3 IP Service Setting 811T/813T ......13-4 Keypad Lock......13-4 Key Setting......12-11 Hold......13-5 Restricted Mode .......13-6 Sub Menu View Setting......12-11

Restricting Packet Transmission	13-7
Restricting Internet Connection	13-7

# **14 Convenient Functions**

Active Window	14-1
About Active Window	14-1
Opening Active Window	14-1
Members List 811T/813T	14-2
Live Monitor	14-3
Weather Information	14-3
Setting Active Window	14-4
Simple Mode	14-6
Switching to Simple Mode	14-6
Displaying the Simple Menu	14-6
Displaying the Full Menu in Simple Mode	14-7
Turning Off Simple Mode	
List of Simple Mode Functions	14-8
Alarms	
Setting Alarms	14-14
Deleting Alarms	14-15
Alarm Time	14-15
Answer Phone	14-16
Setting the Answer Phone	14-16
Setting the Ringing Duration	14-16
Playing/Deleting Messages	14-16
Notepad	14-17
Setting the Category Icon According to the Contents of the Notepad	
Calculator	14-17
Converter	14-18

Dictionary	14-18
Calendar	14-19
Opening Calendar	14-19
Using Information Registered in the Event	14-19
Adding a New Event	14-22
Editing the Events	14-24
Deleting Events	14-25
Alarm Date & Time	14-25
Jumping to the Specified Date	14-25
Setting the Calendar Lock	14-26
Changing the Colors of Dates and Days of the Week	14-26
Using Reminder	14-26
Setting First View	14-27
Setting the Text Color	14-27
Tasks	14-27
Adding Task Items	14-27
Opening Tasks	14-29
Deleting Tasks	14-30
Setting the Tasks Lock	14-30
Time Table	14-31
Registering a Time Table	14-31
Checking the Time Table	14-31
Copying Time Tables	14-31
Deleting Time Tables	14-31
Setting Time Table	14-32
Kitchen Timer	14-32
Voice Recorder	14-33
Recording Sound	14-33
Playing Recordings	14-33
Number Memo	14-34

Viewing a Number Memo	14-34
World Clock	14-34
World Clock Setting	14-34
Displaying World Clock	14-36
Backup	14-36
Transferring files to a Memory Card	14-36
Restoring	14-37
Restoring Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)	14-38
Deleting Backup Data	14-38
Backing up Function Settings	14-39
Transferring to Memory Card	14-39
Restoring Settings	14-39
Using International Call Service	14-40
Changing the International Code	14-40
Adding an Entry to the Country Code List	14-40
Shortcut Menu	14-41
Setting the Shortcut Menu	14-4
Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu	14-4
Editing the Function Names	14-4
Changing the Shortcut Icons	14-4
Moving Icons	14-42
Deleting Shortcut Icons	14-42
Sending Touch Tones	14-42
Sending Individual Touch Tones	14-42
Sending Touch Tones Sequentially	14-42
Using the Pause (P) for Sending Touch Tones	14-43
Using the Stereo Earphone-microphone with Audio Remote Control (Opti	onal) <b>14-4</b> 3
Setting the Phone Number	14-44
One-touch Calling	1/ //
One toden canning	14-44
One-touch Answering	

Setting the Auto	Answer	14	4-	-4	14

# 15 Idokoro Mail

About Idokoro Mail	15-1
Saving People to the Recipients List	15-1
Saving Areas to the Areas List	15-2
Sending Notification Mail	15-3
Leaving or Arriving in the Specified Area	15-3
Sending Simple Notice of Your Location	15-3

# 16 Optional Services

Optional Services	16-1
Call Diverting	16-2
Setting/Activating Call Divert	16-2
Deactivating Call Divert/Voicemail	16-3
Voicemail	16-3
Activating Voicemail	16-3
Listening to Your Voicemail	16-4
Missed Call Notification	16-4
Call Waiting	16-4
Setting/Activating Call Waiting	
Using Call Waiting	16-4
Switching between Two Callers	
Multiparty Call	16-5
Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call	
Switching Your Connection between Parties	16-5
Talking to All Parties	16-6
Call Barring	

Deactivating Call Barring Changing Your Call Barring Service Code	
17 Messaging	
About Messaging	17-1
Customizing Handset Address	17-1
Displaying New Messages	17-2
Checking New Messages	17-2
Checking Received Messages	17-3
Forwarding Messages from Mail Server	17-3
Creating & Sending an S! Mail	17-4
Available Options When You Enter an Address	17-5
Available Options When You Enter a Text	17-5
Decorating the Text	17-6
Attaching Files	17-7
Feeling Setting	17-7
Other Functions	17-8
Creating & Sending an SMS Message	17-9
Other Functions	17-10
Drafts	17-10
Message Box	17-11
Displaying Messages in the Message Box	17-11
Setting Security for Message Box	17-12
Changing the Message Box List Display Mode	17-12
Switching the Message List Display Mode	17-13
Operations While Viewing Messages	17-13
Managing Message Folders	17-14
Replying to Messages	17-15

Activating Call Barring ......16-6

Forwarding Messages	17-15
Making a Call to the Sender of the Message	17-15
Checking Delivery Report	17-16
Linked Information	17-16
Saving Attached Files	17-16
Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages	17-17
Protecting/Unprotecting Messages	17-17
Deleting Messages	17-17
Received/Sent Messages Operations	17-18
Server Mail Operations	17-19
Using the Mail List	17-19
Forwarding Server Messages	17-19
Deleting Server Messages	17-19
Checking the Mail Server Status	17-20
Message Settings	17-20
Display Settings	17-20
Creating Settings	17-2
Sending Settings	17-22
Receiving Settings	17-22
Setting 3D Pictogram Display	17-23
10 Intornat	

### 18 Internet

18-1
18-1
18-1
18-2
18-2
18-3
18-4

Saved Pages	18-4
Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages	18-4
Displaying Saved Pages	18-5
Bookmarks	18-5
Adding a Bookmark	18-5
Using Bookmarks	18-5
Editing Bookmarks	18-5
Setting Browser Security	
Operations for Web Pages	18-7
Entering a URL Directly to Access a Website	18-7
Switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Websites	18-7
Updating the Information	18-7
Using Linked Information	18-8
Copying Text from a Page	18-8
Useful Features While Viewing a Page	18-8
Checking Server Certificates1	8-10
Using Files in Web Pages1	8-10
Browser Settings13	3-12
Changing the Font Size of Text in Information1	8-12
Setting the Scroll Unit of Pages1	
Changing the Text Encoding Type1	8-12
Adjusting the Sound Volume1	
Refusing the Reception of Images or Melodies (Text Browse)1	
Setting a Warning Window When Changing Browsers1	8-13
Memory Management1	8-13
Security Settings1	8-13
Confirming the Root Certificates1	8-14
Specifying the Destination to Save Downloaded Contents1	
Initializing Your Browser1	8-15
Resetting Various Settings of the Browser	8-15

ive Monitor	18-10
Registering New Information to be Displayed	18-1
Resetting the Registered List	18-1

# 19 S! Appli

Getting Started	19-1
Downloading S! Appli	19-2
Starting S! Appli	19-2
Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli	19-3
S! Appli Library	19-3
Deleting S! Appli	19-3
Switching the S! Appli Library Display	19-3
Viewing S! Appli Properties	19-4
Moving S! Appli	19-4
Security Settings	19-4
S! Appli Settings	
Setting the Screensaver	19-5
Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli	
S! Appli Volume	19-6
Backlight Settings	
S! Appli Vibration	19-6
Updating the Information of an S! Appli on the Memory	
Confirming the License Information of an S! Appli	19-7
Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! Appli	

# 20 Communications

S! Town (Japanese Only)	20-1
Using S! Town	20-1

Using the Library	20-1	Subscribing/Canceling Subscription	22-
S! Loop (Japanese Only)	20-1	Checking Content Updates	22-
Hot Status 811T/813T	20-2	Downloading Content Manually	22-
About Hot Status Notifications		Checking History	22-
Creating a Hot Status Members List	20-3	Weather Indicator	22-
Editing Your Hot Status Information	20-6	Comic Surfing	22-
Editing Hot Status Members List	20-7	Reading Electronic Comic Books	22-
Checking Members' Hot Status Information	20-8	Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)	22-
Hot Status Settings	20-9	About Ku-man's Room	22-
		Opening Ku-man's Room	22-
21 S! GPS Navi		Playing with Ku-man	22-
		Checking Messages from Ku-man	22-
Using S! GPS Navi	21-1		
About S! GPS Navi	21-1	23 Appendix	
Starting a Navigation Application	21-1	pp=	
Checking Your Current Position	21-1	Default Settings	23-
Sending Current Position by S! Mail	21-2	Troubleshooting	23-1
Using Location Logs	21-2	Updating Software	23-1
Saving Location Information to My Locations	21-3	Updating Software	23-1
Settings	21-3	Pictograph List	23-1
Setting Quick GPS	21-3	Arrange-picture List	23-1
Saving a Map URL	21-3	Storage Capacity	23-1
Selecting the Navigation Application	21-4	Main Specifications	23-1
Positioning Lock	21-4	Glossary	23-1
Privacy Settings	21-4	Index	23-2
Location Information Send Settings	21-4	Warranty & After Sales Service	23-3
		Warranty	23-3
22 Entertainment		After Sales Service	23-3
		Customer Service	23-3
S! Cast (Japanese Only)	22-1	Customer Service	

### **About This Manual**

Please note, the 810T, 811T and 813T are referred to as "handset" in this manual.

#### Symbols

- " " navigates you to the next menu.
- "

  " navigates you to the next action/item.
- is used to confirm your selection.

Some operations are not fully explained in this manual.

#### About 811T / 811T/813T

This manual includes explanations that are exclusive to the 811T or 813T. The relevant explanations can be identified by [811T] or [811T/813T].

811T Exclusive to 811T

[811T/813T] Exclusive to 811T and 813T

The following feature is available only on the 811T:

• Music Player Menu (page 8-11)

The following features are available only on 811T and 813T:

- Circle Talk (Chapter 6)
- Hot Status (page 20-2)
- IP Service Setting (page 13-4) Active Window Communication mode (page 14-1)

#### **About Screenshots**

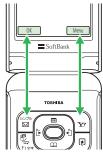
The screenshots appearing in this manual may differ from the actual screens appearing on the handset.

#### **About Operation Keys**

Key icons appearing in the text of this manual are those of the 810T (except music player keys that are exclusive to the 811T).

### Soft Keys

Use Soft Keys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the Main Display.



- Press 🗑 to select OK.
- Press 🗹 to access Option menu.

#### Tip

- Soft Key operations vary by the current function.
- In this manual, Soft Key operations are described as below.

  → [∞] (Menu)

### **Navigation Key**

The following notations are used to indicate Navigation Key operations.

Notation/Operation	Function	
Press up	Opens Active Window* Increases volume Moves cursor up	
Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down	
• O Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left	
Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right	
Accesses Main menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release		

<sup>\*</sup> Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by modifying the Navigation Key settings (page 12-11).

### **Safety Precautions**

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words.
   Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.

### **Pictograph Descriptions**

Pictograph	Meaning
<u> </u>	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury <sup>1</sup> of the user.
Warning Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury of the user.	
<b>Caution</b>	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury <sup>2</sup> to the user or damage to property <sup>3</sup> .

- 1 Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

### **Symbol Descriptions**

Symbol	Meaning
Prohibited	indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
Compulsory	① indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out.  The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

### **Limitation of Liability**

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

# **A** Danger



# Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery pack or charger

No disasseml Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 23-31).



Do not dispose of the handset, battery pack or charger in a fire or expose it to heat

No flames

if the handset or battery pack is exposed to water, do not dry it artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery pack or charger in hot places such as near a fire or heater Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

### **⚠** Danger



#### Do not expose the handset, charger or battery pack to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If the handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the handset and contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 23-31).



Do not leave the handset, charger or battery pack outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used

Do not place the handset, charger or battery pack near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Exposure to water or other fluids may cause electric shock, overheating, rupturing or fire.



Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery pack into the handset or connecting the handset to the charger

Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.



Do not touch the battery pack connectors (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Doing so may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.



Do not use a battery pack other than one supplied with or designated for the handset

Compulsory Do not use the battery pack for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



Do not use a charger other than one supplied with or designated for the handset to charge the battery pack Compulsory Do not use the charger for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery pack comes into contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with clean water as this may hurt your body

And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them. and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.



#### Do not charge the battery pack while it is wet or damp

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or short circuit. If the battery pack is exposed to fluids such as water, unplug the AC Charger immediately.



Do not use the handset while driving Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.



#### Turn off the handset prior to entering areas with flammable gases

Compulsory Gas fumes may ignite and cause a fire. Turn off the handset and do not charge the battery in areas with flammable gases such as gas stations.



Do not swing the handset by its strap or the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.



#### Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.



#### Remove the power plug from the outlet if the AC Charger is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.



Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Compulsory Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.



Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take Compulsory pictures or record videos

> Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident.



#### Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage

Compulsory Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the AC Charger and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for an In-Car Charger.



### Wipe away any dust on the plug of the AC Charger with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.



#### Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices

- · Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags
- · Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal. etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.



#### When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately

#### Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.



#### If the battery pack fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately

Compulsory Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 23-31).



#### When inserting the AC Charger plug into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any Compulsory other metal object does not touch the plug

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.



If something unusual happens to the handset, battery pack or charger; for example, it emits smoke or an Compulsory unusual odor or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

- 1. If the battery pack is charging, unplug the AC Charger from the AC household outlet or unplug the In-Car Charger from the cigarette lighter socket.
- 2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery pack.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 23-31).



#### Do not drop the handset or battery pack or subject it to excessive shock

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.



#### Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Excess weight may damage the Display, battery pack or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.



If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical Compulsory equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

#### Observe the following guidelines

- 1. If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
- 2. Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
- 3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
  - · Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
  - · Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
  - · Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
  - · Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.
- 4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



Do not use the AC Charger with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

**Prohibited** Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.

### Caution



Do not use or leave the handset or battery pack in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Keep the handset, battery pack and charger away from infants and small children

Failing to do so may result in the battery pack or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.



Make sure that the charger terminals (metal parts) do not come into contact with wires or other metal objects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.



Do not pull the cord when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger from an AC household outlet or socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger.



Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the AC Charger and In-Car Charger Do not damage or modify them Do not place objects on them Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters

Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.



Do not plug or unplug the AC Charger with wet hands Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

hands



Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.



Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects invehicle electronic devices

Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

### **⚠** Caution



# Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface

Prohibited

Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.



# Do not dispose of the used battery pack with ordinary garbage

Prohibited

Insulate the connectors with tape and then dispose of the used battery pack separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



# Do not touch the handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes

Prohibited

<sup>1</sup> Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of the handset and cause overheating or malfunction.



Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running

Prohibited

d Doing so may result in a flat battery.



# If the fuse for the In-Car Charger blows, replace it with a designated fuse

**Compulsory** Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.

For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the In-Car Charger.



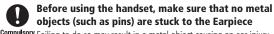
If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist

The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in **Compulsory** some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)	
Part	810T/813T	811T
Outer housing (Keypad, Hinge Cover, Main Camera, Battery Cover), Keys (other than Center Key), Side Keys, Memory Card Slot Cap, Screw Cover (lower side of Main Display, side of Main Camera)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	
Outer housing (Main Display side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)*	PC/ABS resin
Outer housing (External Display side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)
Main Display Panel, External Display Panel, Main Camera Panel, Sub Camera Panel, Mobile Light Panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic ink processing)	
Center Key, Close-up Switch	PC resin	
Music Player Keys (center part)		PC resin
Music Player Keys		PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Earphone Microphone Jack Cap, Cable and Handset Charging Terminal Cap	Polyester elastomer resin (acrylic urethane coating)	
Cable and Handset Charging Terminal	Stainless steel (gold plating, nickel undercoat)	
Infrared Port, Charging Indicator, External Light	Acrylic resin	
Screws	Steel (nickel coating, copper undercoat)	
Earpiece	Urethane resin	
Speaker Hole Mesh	Stainless steel (acrylic baking coating)	

<sup>\*</sup> Tin undercoat for the 813T

### **↑** Caution



Compulsory Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear injury, etc.

If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings

Compulsory Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.

Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing the handset and not to trap your fingers in Compulsory the hinge when opening the handset

Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the LCD Display.

Do not use the Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting

d Doing so may dazzle the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.

Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during charging using a bited USB connection, AC charger, etc.

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.

Do not turn the volume up too high while using the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote Compulsory control

Do not use the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control continuously for long periods of time

Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.

# Do not insert objects other than the memory card into the Memory Card Slot

Prohibited Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction. Cover the slot with the cap at times other than when you are inserting or removing the memory card.

O Prohibited

Keep your face away from the Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card  $\,$ 

**Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children** If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.

### **⚠** Caution



Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.



**Use only the memory card supported by the handset** Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

**Prohibited** The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January, 2007).



Do not let children use cables such as the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach

An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck.



Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication

Prohibited Doing so may cause eye damage.



Do not use the Mobile Light close to eyes

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.



# Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM card

Prohibited

Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.



Use only a USIM card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

### **General Notes**

### **Using Your Handset**

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call may be suddenly cut off.
- When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
- The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
- Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
- The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
- The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the
  possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be
  ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
- Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions
  - · The handset is used improperly.
  - · The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
  - · The handset is turned off during operation.
  - · The battery pack is completely discharged.
  - · The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery pack before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery pack is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
- Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
- When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else.

Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, Libya, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.

 If you have hearing aids, use of the handset may interfere with some operations of the hearing aids. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aids.

#### Inside Vehicles

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

#### **Aboard Aircraft**

 Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Do not turn the handset back on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

### **Handling Basics**

- Do not use the handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Avoid exposing the handset to rain, snow or high humidity. The handset, battery pack, charger and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery pack has been removed from the handset or the handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.
- The battery pack is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery pack with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely

- short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery pack designated for the handset.
- When disposing of a used battery pack after battery pack replacement or discontinued use of the handset, insulate the connectors with tape or place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop or battery pack recycling cooperative store. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.



- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a
  defect or malfunction. If the Display is left on for a long period of time,
  pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control is securely plugged into the Earphone Microphone Jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using the stereo earphonemicrophone with audio remote control. Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when walking, resulting in an accident
- When Earphone Microphone Jack and Cable and Handset Charging Terminal are not in use, make sure to replace the caps. Otherwise dust or water may enter the handset causing handset malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control. Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.

- Do not close the handset with the strap, USB cable or stereo earphonemicrophone with audio remote control inside. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage.
- The antenna of the handset is built into the body and does not protrude.
   Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover the portion of the body containing the internal antenna (page 1-5). In particular, do not affix things like stickers onto this portion of the body.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow the USIM card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places.
   Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM card, read the instruction manual of the USIM card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.

#### **Functional Limitations**

- The following functions are not available after replacing your handset or terminating the subscription.
  - Camera
  - · Media Player
  - S! Appli
- The above functions may become unavailable after handset has not been used for a long time.

#### Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

### Mobile Light & External Light

- Do not use the Mobile Light in hot, cold or humid places. Doing so may shorten its life.
- The Mobile Light and External Light have a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

### Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

### **Right of Portrait**

Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

#### **Federal Communication Commission Statement**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### **TOSHIBA CORPORATION**

# IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

#### **End User License Agreement**

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").

Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

License Grant. Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software.

- 2. Copyright. The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
- 3. Reverse Engineering. You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
- 4. <u>DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY</u>. The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE

- AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.
- 5. LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.

PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR FRASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

- 6. <u>Laws</u>. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
- 7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
- Third Party Beneficiary. You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

### **Trademarks and Patents**

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations :

illieu states ratellis aliu/ol	their counterparts in c	illei Hallons .
4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		



Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.



microSD<sup>™</sup> is a trademark of the SD Card Association.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation © 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.

SEE <u>HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM</u>.



T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No. 特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Copyright © 1998-2003 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OPENSSL PROJECT AND/OR BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENSSL PROJECT, ERIC YOUNG OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

Sha-mail, Sky Mail, Arrange Mail, Location Navi, S! Mail, S! Appli, S! GPS Navi, S! CAST, S! Address Book, Hot Status, Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Movie Sha-mail, Navi appli, Live Monitor, S! Town, S! Loop, and Feeling Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Copyright © 1995-2006 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved. Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

ComicSurfing® is a trademark or registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

The 810T contains NetFront Browser and NetFront Messaging Client software of ACCESS CO., LTD.

Copyright © 2004-2006 ACCESS CO., LTD.

# A@@ESS NetFront®

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

The 811T/813T contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Messaging Client, NetFront IMS Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.

# ACŒESS™ **NetFront**®

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!/Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

C€ 0682

# **SAR**

# FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g., at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model. The highest SAR value for this model handset when tested for use at the ear is 1.030 W/kg for 810T, 1.030 W/kg for 811T and 0.532 W/kg for 813T, and when worn on the body, as described in this user guide, is 0.545 W/kg for 810T, 0.545 W/kg for 811T and 0.214 W/kg for 813T. Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid after searching on SP2-CC4-J03 for 810T, SP2-CC4-J04 for 811T and SP2-CC4-J05 for 813T.

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

# **European RF Exposure Information**

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 1.180 W/kg for 810T, 1.180 W/kg for 811T and 1.180 W/kg for 813T\*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide\*\*. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.360 W/kg for 810T, 0.360 W/kg for 811T and 0.360 W/kg for 813T. As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a 'hands-free' device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional Information can be found on the websites of the World Health Organization (http://www.who.int/emf).

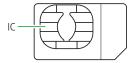
- \* The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.
- \*\* Please see the <FCC RF Exposure Information> section about body worn operation.

# **USIM Card**

The USIM card is an IC card that stores customer information such as your phone number. Insert USIM card in USIM card compatible SoftBank handsets only.

### About the USIM Card

- If the USIM card is not inserted, the handset cannot be used.
- Save Phone Book entries and SMS messages on USIM card (pages 4-11, 17-13).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert USIM cards into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM cards. Malfunction may result.
- For details on the USIM card, refer to the instruction manual provided with the USIM card.



### **Important**

- USIM cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM cards are recycled.
- USIM card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Backup USIM card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM card or handset (with USIM card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

# Inserting & Removing the USIM Card

 Before inserting or removing the USIM card, turn off the handset and remove the battery pack.

### Inserting

1 Draw out the tray by pulling the tab



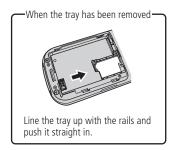
- Place the USIM card on the tray with the IC (page 1-1) facing up
  - Line up the notch on the USIM card with the tray.



# **3** Push the tray all the way in

### Removing

1 Pull the tab to draw out the tray and remove the USIM card



#### Note

- Avoid touching or scratching the USIM card's IC.
- Do not force the USIM card into or out of the handset; damage may result.
- Make sure that the USIM card's tray is not sticking out when you insert the battery pack. If the tray is sticking out, the battery pack cannot be inserted and the USIM card and the tray may be damaged.
- Take care not to lose the USIM card after removing it from the handset.

 Some Chaku-Uta<sup>®</sup>/Chaku-Uta Full<sup>®</sup>, melody, movie, S! Appli or book files in your handset or memory card may be inaccessible after repairing or replacing the handset, terminating the subscription, or replacing the USIM card. Preinstalled S! Appli, S! Town and Comic Surfing applications may become unavailable if a different USIM card is inserted

# **USIM PINs**

For security, the USIM card has two security codes: PIN1 and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

### PIN1

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When **PINI Setting** (page 13-1) is set to **Activate**, PIN1 is required each time the handset is turned on. The default setting is "9999". PIN1 can be changed (page 13-1).

## PIN2

This is the four to eight digit security code required for operations such as resetting Call Time&Cost and setting Fixed Dial #. The default setting is "9999". PIN2 can be changed (page 13-1).

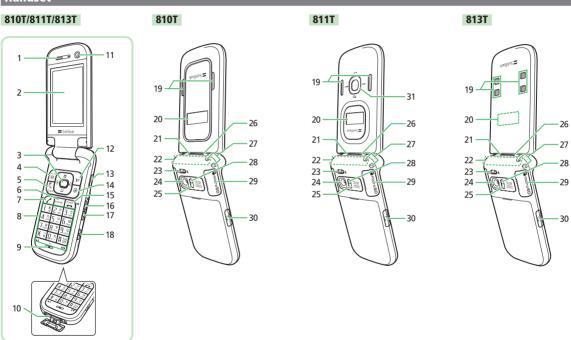
### PIN Lock & PUK Codes

PIN lock is set when an incorrect PIN1 or PIN2 is entered three times consecutively. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN1 lock/PIN2 lock. To obtain PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

#### Note

 If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, USIM card is locked. USIM card lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

# Handset



<sup>\*</sup> Illustrations of keys may differ in appearance from your handset model (above illustrations use 810T keys).

- 1. Earpiece
- 2. Display
- 3. Navigation Key : Move cursor up, down, left or right, access functions assigned to the Navigation Key (page 12-11), etc.
  Center Key : Access the Main menu from Standby. Use this key to confirm selected items and perform selected operations.
- 4. Left Soft Key (a): Access the Messaging menu from Standby. Press and hold (a) from Standby to switch to the Simple mode (page 14-6).
- Media Player Key : Access Media Player (Audio menu) from Standby or make/answer video calls.
- Clear/Memo Key previous Delete characters and return to the previous operation. Also use this key to access Answer Phone from Standby.
- 8. **Keypad**: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.

  Press and hold a key (1 to 9 mill) from Standby to search for Phone
  Book entries of the column assigned to the key.
  - 关/华**Key**[天電]: In a menu list, use to scroll to the previous page and in camera mode, use to turn on Mobile Light.

To display My Status (page 20-6), press and hold 🗓 from Standby. ##/ **Key Key Key**

To set or cancel manner mode, press and hold  $\boxplus \Re$  from Standby (page 2-10).

- 9. Microphone
- 10. Cable and Handset Charging Terminal: Connect AC Charger (page 1-12) and other devices.
- 11. Sub Camera: Used for video call, etc.
- **12. Right Soft Key** : Access Yahoo! Keitai from Standby.
- **13. Infrared Port**: Used for infrared communication (page 11-1).
- **14. Shortcut Key** 📵: Access the Shortcuts menu (page 14-41).
- 15. End/Power Key :: Power handset on/off, end calls/operations and return to Standby.
- **16. Side Key (Up)** : Access Circle Talk Members List (page 6-2).
- **17. Side Key (Down)** : Press and hold to send a Simple Notice of your location (page 15-3), set/cancel manner mode, or turn the Mobile Light on. The key function can be changed (page 12-11).
- **18. Camera Key** S: Activate the camera, etc. This key also acts as the shutter button during camera use. Press and hold while your handset is closed to set/cancel the Hold setting (page 13-5).
- 19. Stereo Speakers
- 20. External Display: Notifies of incoming calls, received messages and other information while your handset is closed.
- 21. External Light: Flashes for incoming calls, messages, etc.
- 22. Internal Antenna: The antenna is built into your handset.

- **23. Close-up Switch**: Use to switch to macro mode (page 7-4) when using camera function.
- 24. Main Camera: Used for taking pictures and recording videos.
- Camera/Video Indicator: Flashes when the camera or video is activated.
- 26. Charging Indicator: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
- 27. Handstrap Hole
- 28. Mobile Light: Used as flash when taking pictures or recording videos at night time or while indoors.
- 29. Memory Card Slot
- Earphone Microphone Jack: Connect the stereo earphonemicrophone with audio remote control (optional).
- **31. Music Player Menu Key**  \*: Access the Music Player menu (page 8-11).

**Left Music Player Key** ••••O\*: Used for selecting a Music Player menu item or rewinding music files, etc.

**Right Music Player Key Open**\*: Used for selecting a Music Player menu item or forwarding music files, etc.

**Music Player Key**  $\mathfrak{S}_{n}^{*}$ : Press and hold  $\mathfrak{S}_{n}^{*}$  to start Music Player.

\* Available only when handset is closed

# **Display Indicators**



🕦 게 Signal Strength

Strong Weak
Moderate Faint

Out of Range

- Note: Note: Note: On (page 2-11)
- 2 🔊 🗗 Voice/Video Call
  - Dial-up Connection
  - **Positioning**
  - **\*\*/\*\* Quick GPS Activated/Paused** (page 21-3)

- ③ A Packet Transmission
  - Displaying Picture File with Location Information
  - Ready Packet Transmission Ready
  - Packet Network Range
- 4 III/III 3G Network Connection/Roaming
  - M/ GSM Network Connection/Roaming
  - R/A GPRS Network Connection/Roaming
  - Service Area of Operator Other Than SoftBank
- (5) New S! Cast (page 22-1)
  - Reception of Rights Object Indicates the reception of a content key (page 17-3) during operation.
  - Message Box Full

  - Mew S! Mail/SMS (page 17-2)
  - Delivery Report
  - New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
- (6) PC Website Connected (page 18-4)
  - New Live Monitor Info (pages 14-3, 18-16)
  - Memory Card Inserted (page 9-1)
- 7 Meb SSL Indicates a connection to an information page with security protection (page 18-2).
  - Infrared Communication (page 11-1)
  - **USB Connection** (page 11-5)
  - My Status Online (page 20-7)
- (8) **Dpdating Software** (page 23-12)
  - External Connection for Data Synchronization
  - S! Appli Activated/Paused (page 19-2)

- Music File Playing (page 8-2)
- Music File Playback Paused
- Video File Playing (page 8-2)
- **Streaming** (page 8-6)
- (9) Manner Mode (Silent) (page 12-1)
  - Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 12-1)
  - Similar Signal Manner Mode (page 12-1)
- Battery Level
  - Sufficiently Charged
    - Very Low
  - Low

- Charge Immediately
- Charging (page 1-12)
- ① Time
- P Password Lock Active (page 13-2)
  - Keypad Lock Active (page 13-4)
- (13) **\*\* Alarm Set** (page 14-14)
- (pages 2-4, 14-16)
  - Answer Phone Off and You Have a Message (pages 2-4, 14-16)
- (15) Wew Voicemail Message (page 16-3)
  - **Call Diverting (Ringer Off for Voice Call)** (page 16-2)
  - **Call Diverting (Ringer Off for Video Call)** (page 16-2)
  - Call Diverting (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls) (page 16-2)
- (f) Information Prompt Redisplay (page 1-10)
- ① James Missed Call (page 2-7)
- (18) Secret Mode On (page 13-3)
- (19) W Hot Status Notification (Saving Request) (page 20-2)

# **External Display Indicators**



- ¶ Signal Strength
  - Till Strong
- ¶ Weak
- ¶ Moderate ♥ Faint
- Offline Mode On (page 2-11)
- ② F Message Box Full

  - New S! Mail/SMS (page 17-2)
  - **Delivery Report** (page 17-16)
  - New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report
  - Password Lock Active (page 13-2)
  - Hold Active (page 13-5)
  - Keypad Lock Active (page 13-4)
  - Music Player Cannot be Started (page 8-9)
- ③ Missed Call (page 2-7)
  - Manner Mode (Silent) (page 12-1)
  - Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 12-1)
  - জী/ছি/ছি Original Manner Mode (page 12-1)

- Wew Voicemail Message (page 16-3)
   ✓ Answer Phone On and You Have a Message (pages 2-4, 14-16)
   ✓ Answer Phone Off and You Have a Message (pages 2-4, 14-16)
   Wey Law and Wessage (pages 2-4, 14-16)
   Wery Low and Low and Charge Immediately
   Charging (page 1-12)
- 6 Time

# **Information Prompt**

Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information.

When Information Prompt appears, scroll to an item and press •

The following items are available.



### **Information Prompt Items**

Stop Snooze : Cancel snooze (page 14-15) Missed Calls : Missed calls (page 2-7) Missed Calls : New voicemail message(s) at Voicemail Center (page 16-3) : New message(s) recorded (page 2-4) Answer Phone ■ New Messages : Unread S! Mail/SMS (page 17-2) **Unsent Messages**: Unsent S! Mail/SMS Delivered : Unread delivery report(s) (page 17-16) Missed CT : Missed Circle Talk calls (page 2-7) : New Hot Status notification (page 20-2) Notification New CAST : Content update(s) available (page 22-1) M CAST Info. : CAST update failed (page 22-2) Weather Updated: Weather report update available (page 22-3)

Live Monitor : Live Monitor update failed (page 14-3) Software Update: Software updated (page 23-12)

**Content Keys Full**: Content key cannot be saved any more

Resume S! Appli : S! Appli paused

- To close Information Prompt, press . To redisplay Information Prompt, press and hold .
- If the number of unchecked items exceeds 100, "am" appears instead
  of the number of unchecked items.
- When New CAST, CAST Info. and Live Monitor prompts appear, access is available to only the most recent item.

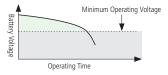
# **Battery & Charger**

# **Getting Started**

Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.

### **Battery Pack**

 The battery pack of your handset uses a lithium ion battery. It has a tendency to gradually lose its voltage with the operating time as shown in the figure below.



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery pack in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- Charging at low temperatures does not produce the best results. Make sure you charge the battery pack at temperatures of 5 to 35 degrees.
- When storing the battery pack separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery pack connectors. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeated charging and discharging of a battery shortens the operating time.

- When disposing of a used battery pack, insulate the connectors with tape
  or place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest
  SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for
  environmental conservation.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place heavy objects on it.

### **Battery Drain**

- The battery pack discharges little by little when stored for a long time even
  if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and
  about 50% per half a year.
- If the handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use the mobile light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

### **Battery Level**

 The battery level on the display (page 1-7) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace it when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out " " ", a message appears and the battery alarm tone sounds. The handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

### Charging

- The battery pack must be inside handset to charge it. Use a specified AC Charger, desktop cradle (optional) and In-Car Charger (optional).
- Clean Cable and Handset Charging Terminal and battery pack's connector with a dry cotton swab. It may cause contact failure if it is unclean.

- If the message Please check connection with your charger appears, clean the charger terminals, battery pack connectors, and external connecters with a dry cotton swab, etc, and try again.
  - When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery pack to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- Do not charge the battery pack in humid places.
- Charging is possible while your handset is turned on, but takes longer than while your handset is turned off.
- The handset and charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives while the handset is being charged, it sounds the ringtone, vibrates, or flashes the external light in the same way as usual.

# Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack



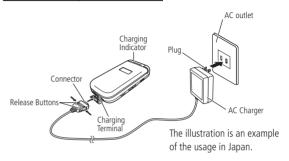
- 1 Press down on notch and slide battery cover (1)
- **2** Lift up the battery cover (②)
- Insert battery pack. Make sure to align the back of the battery pack with the connector when inserting the battery pack (3)
  - To remove the battery pack, insert a fingernail beneath the bottom or side tab and lift out the battery pack.
- 4 Place the battery cover on your handset and slide it until it clicks into place (4)

#### Note

- Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on. Insert a fingernail beneath the bottom or side tab and lift out the battery pack.
   Do not lift out the battery pack in any other way than this.
- Make sure that the USIM card's tray is not sticking out when you insert the battery pack. If the tray is sticking out, the battery pack cannot be inserted and the USIM card and the tray may be damaged.

## **Charging with the AC Charger**

Charging Time | Approx. 120 min.



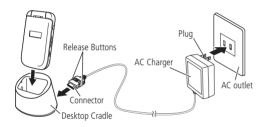
- 1 Connect the AC Charger to Handset
  - Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face up.
- 2 Insert the plug into an AC outlet
  Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.
- 3 After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the outlet
- 4 Remove the AC Charger from Handset
  - Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the AC Charger from Handset.

#### Note

- AC Charger supports a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- To use AC Charger outside Japan, purchase an appropriate adapter plug. SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any problem resulting from charging overseas.

## **Charging with the Desktop Cradle (Optional)**

# **Charging Time** Approx. 120 min.



The illustration is an example of the usage in Japan.

- 1 Connect the AC Charger to Desktop Cradle
  - Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face up.
- 2 Insert the plug into an AC outlet

# **3** Place Handset into Desktop Cradle

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

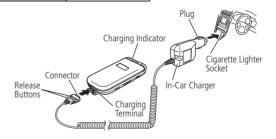
- 4 After Charging Indicator goes out, remove Handset from Desktop Cradle
- **5** Remove the AC Charger from the AC outlet

#### Note

- AC Charger support a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- To use AC Charger outside Japan, purchase an appropriate adapter plug. SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any problem resulting from charging overseas.

## Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)

**Charging Time** Approx. 120 min.



# 1 Connect the In-Car Charger to Handset

- The inscription on the In-Car Charger connector should face up.
- Insert the plug into the cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

3 After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the cigarette lighter socket

# 4. Remove the In-Car Charger from Handset

 Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the In-Car Charger from Handset.

#### Note

- Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running.
   Doing so may drain the battery.
- If you move away from the car, unplug the In-Car Charger. In a car
  where the cigarette lighter socket works even after removing the car key
  (the Charging Indicator illuminates even after removing the car key),
  leaving the In-Car Charger plugged in may drain the battery.
- Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

# **Turning Handset Power On/Off**

### **Turning Handset Power On**

Press and hold 🚍

The power is turned on and the Standby screen appears.

#### Tip

- After you turn on your handset, it does the following.
  - A wake-up alarm sounds (page 12-4).
  - The Charging Indicator illuminates.
  - The Camera/Video Indicator illuminates.
  - The External Light flashes.
- If PIN1 Setting (page 13-1) is set to Activate, enter your PIN1 code.
- The following windows appear the first time you turn on the power of your handset or after performing *Reset All* or *Reset Setting* (page 13-5).
  - Date&Time Settings (page 1-15)
  - Retrieving Network Information (page 1-15) (appears when you press , a or w in Standby)

### **Turning Handset Power Off**

1 Press and hold

The power is turned off.

- Before your handset turns off, it does the following.
  - The shutdown tone sounds (page 12-4).
  - The External Light flashes.
- If handset is not used for long periods of time (powered off or out of range), some features may become unavailable. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

## **Retrieving Network Information**

Before using Yahoo! Keitai, Mail, S! Appli, etc., retrieve the network connection information

The first time you press lacking or lacking after purchasing your handset, a prompt appears.

1 In Standby, press •, © or 🔀

**2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

A network connection is established and the network information is retrieved

#### Note

- If network information is not retrieved, it will limit some of the available features of the handset.
- After you replace the USIM Card, make sure you retrieve network information

#### Tip

 You can also retrieve network information from the Main menu (page 12-14).

## **Date & Time**

- 1 In Standby, press  $\bullet \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Select *Phone Settings* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ *Clock* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$
- 3 Select *Date&Time* → → Enter the year, month, date and time →
  - To set the date and time, enter the last two digits of the year and the month, the day, the hour, and the minute in two digits respectively. Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
  - While entering the date and time, you can move the cursor by pressing . You can also increase or decrease the numbers selected by the cursor by pressing .
  - The day of the week is set automatically.

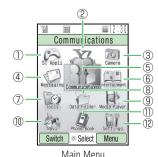
### Tip

### You can:

- Enter a date from 2000/01/02 to 2099/12/30.
- Switch the clock to 12-hour system (page 12-7).
- Change the clock display format (page 12-5).
- Set DST (Daylight Saving Time) (page 14-35).

# **Accessing Functions from Main Menu**

To access the Main menu, press lacktriangle in Standby. Use  $\bf \ref{to}$  to select a menu icon and press  $\bf \ref{to}$  to access that menu.



### ①S! Appli

Access applications such as games (Chapter 19).

- Library
- Settings
- Card Sync
- Certification
- Information

### 2 Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai menu and download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Browser for Internet access to the Web (Chapter 18).

- Yahoo! Keitai
- Bookmarks
- Saved Pages
- Enter URL

History

- Live Monitor
- PC Browser Settings

### **3**Camera

Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 7).

- Mobile
- DigitalVideo Mail
- VideoShort Video
- Scan Data

### **4** Messaging

Create S! Mail/SMS messages. Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 17).

- Message Box
- Create Msg.
- Retrieve Msg. Drafts
- TemplatesServer Mail
- Unsent Msg.Settings

### **(5)Communications**

You can communicate with other users or enjoy shopping (Chapters 6, 20).

- S! Town
- S! Loop
- Hot Status
- Circle Talk

#### **6** Entertainment

Access CAST functions, launch Comic Surfing and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 22).

CAST

- Comic Surfing
- Ku-man's Room

### (7)Tools

Access preinstalled accessories (Chapters 14, 15, 23).

 Alarms Notepad Answer Phone

Dictionary

 Calculator Calendar

 Tasks • Time Table Useful Tools Idokoro Mail

 Backup Update

### ® Data Folder

Save/access files here (Chapter 10).

Pictures

• Ring Song · Tone

S! Appli Videos Templates  Music Books

Flash(R)

 Gamendeco Memory Status Other Documents

# **9 Media Player**

Play audio and video files (Chapter 8).

Audio

Videos

Streaming

#### 10 NAVI

Check your current position, check the route to your destination, etc. (Chapter 21).

 Navi Appli Ouick GPS

 Locate Me Location Mail Mv Locations

• Location Logs

• NAVI Settings

### (1)Phone Book

Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 4).

 My Details Add New

 Phone Book Call Log

Group

SI Addr Book

Settings

Memory Status

## **®**Settings

Modify and confirm handset settings (Chapters 12, 13, 14). Display

Sounds

Phone Settings

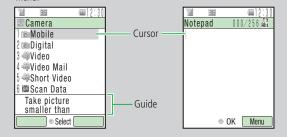
 Call Settings • Idle Screen

 Security Connectivity

SimpleMode ON

Priority Memory

- About the items shown after you select an item in the Main menu, the icons and the order of appearance are partly different in Icon View and in Tab View (right).
- You can view the default settings of each item in Default Settings (page 23-2).
- The cursor appears as "|" or " \| " when entering text, or " \| " in the menu, etc.
- Items selected by the cursor are displayed in the guide display of the menu.



### Main Menu View

Change Main menu view from Icon View (default) to Tab View. In Tab View, sub menus appear when a tab is selected.

# In Standby, press ●→ (Switch)

To return to Icon View, press (Switch) in Tab View.

## **2** Select an item

Sub menu items appear to the right. To select an item, press of and scroll to the item.



Tab View

## Original Main Menu

Organize the items in the Main menu and change the menu icons, color of the icon text, and focus frame.

# 1 In Standby, press

## **■**Changing the Order of Items

Press (Menu)→*Change Order*→Select an item→ Select a position to move to→

 To reset the changed order of items to the original state, select Reset Order

### ■Changing the Font Color of Item Name

Press (Menu)→Font Color→ Select a color→

### ■Changing the Icons and Wallpaper All at Once

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Set Images $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Original/Normal/Ku-man  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- Selecting *Original* brings back the original Main menu.
- To change the icons and wallpaper individually, select *Options*.

### **■**Changing the Wallpaper

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Wallpaper  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Phone Memory/Memory Card  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a wallpaper  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **■**Changing Menu Icons

**Phone Memory/Memory Card**  $\longrightarrow$  Select a menu icon  $\longrightarrow$ 

### **■**Changing the Focus Frame

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Highlight* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Select a pattern $\rightarrow$ 

### ■Resetting the Icon and Wallpaper Settings

Tip

 Font Color, Highlight, Icons, and Wallpaper can only be set when Set Images is set to Options.

## Selecting Items by Using the Keypad

Enter the menu number on handset keypad for direct access to that menu  $([0, \frac{n}{2}] - [9, \frac{n}{2}], [rac{n}{2}, \frac{n}{2}])$ .



The number corresponding to the keypad

# **Codes**

Your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code. If those codes are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- Do not reveal your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

# **Security Code**

Security Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to use various functions. Your security code can be changed (page 13-1). The default setting is "9999".

### **Center Access Code**

Center Access Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to perform optional service operations from a fixed-line phone or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

## **Call Barring Service Code**

Call Barring Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to set call barring. The code can be changed (page 16-7).

## Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 13-8).

# **Making a Call**

# 1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press 🕜

The call is made.

- Confirm that the signal level is sufficient before making a call (page 1-6).
- Include the area code for all numbers.
- When making a call to mobile, car, or PHS phones, enter all the digits of the other party's phone number starting with "0".
- Press 

   or press and hold 
   return to Standby. Press 
   result to delete the last number entered.
- When the line is busy, the busy tone can be heard. Press (and call again after a while.

# **2** Press no end the call

### Note

- Covering the internal antenna portion (page 1-5) of your handset affects signal strength. Avoid touching this part of your handset during use. Do not stick a sticker on the internal antenna part.
- Do not wrap the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control (optional) around the handset. Bringing the stereo earphonemicrophone close to the internal antenna may cause noise.
- The orientation and location of the handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit (page 2-9) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

#### Tip

 In Standby, enter a number and press (Menu) to perform the following:

Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 6-2) / Intl. Calls (below) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / Pause (page 14-43) / Manual Hyphen (enter a "-") / Hide My ID (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13)

- During calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   End Call | Hold | Mute My Voice | Mute All | Phone Book (page 4-7) | Call Log | Voice Record | My Details | DTMF OFF
- You can receive a call while browsing the Web and receive mail during a call. This is called multiple connections. Multiple connections are possible in areas with 3G-network coverage (UMTS areas).

# Making an International Call from Japan

Make international calls from Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international call service.
   For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- 1 In Standby, enter a phone number→ (Menu)
  → Intl. Calls → •
- **2** Select a country→
  - "+" (international code) and the country code are added before the phone number.
- 3 Press 🕜

- The international code can be changed (page 14-40).

### Caller ID

Caller ID displays the caller's phone number on the receiver's handset. Set your handset to show or hide your handset number for outgoing calls (page 12-13).

## Redialing

Make calls from Dialed Number. Information such as the phone number, date and time you called is recorded for up to 20 as dialed calls.

1 In Standby, press 💿

Dialed numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

- **2** Select a record and press 🗷
  - Press and hold to make a Circle Talk call.
- **3** Press ( to end the call

### Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-11) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- All the calls may not be saved to the call log depending on the circumstance.
- From Dialed Number, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 6-2) / Intl.
   Calls (page 2-1) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / To Phone
   Book (page 4-2) / Add to List (page 12-13) / Delete / Hide My ID (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13) / Call Log Lock (page 2-8)
- If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to ON when Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to Hide, only the phone number is displayed on dialed numbers.

# **Answering a Call**

- 1 Press 🕜 when a call is received
- **2** Press 🕦 to end the call

#### Tip

- Pressing also answers an incoming call.
- Besides and , you can also answer calls by pressing D.2-9.2,
   Y or H w when Any Key Answer (page 12-12) is set to ON.
- You can answer calls just by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 12-12) is set to *ON*.
- If you miss a call, Information Prompt (page 1-9) appears.
- If the caller's information is saved to Phone Book, the saved information (name and picture) appears when a call is received. If the caller is saved as Secret (page 4-3), only the phone number appears when Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to *Hide*.
- When you receive a call with no Caller ID, either Unavailable, Withheld, or Payphone appears.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received with the handset open, use . To adjust the ringtone volume with the handset closed, press . 1/-1.
- To stop the ringtone while a call is being received, press and hold a.
- Close your handset to end a call. Please note however, closing your handset does not end the call when your handset is connected to the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control (optional).

# When You Cannot Answer Immediately

# Placing an Incoming Call on Hold

Place an incoming call on hold when you are unable to answer it right away.

# 1 Press 连 when a call is received

Voice guidance in Japanese notifies the caller that you are unable to answer the call at the moment.

- Press 🕜 to answer the call
- Press 🚎 to end the call

#### Note

- Call charges apply to a caller while the caller is waiting for you to answer.
- Pressing while placing an incoming call on hold ends the incoming call that is on hold.
- When Open to Talk (page 12-12) is set to ON, opening the handset answers the call and therefore this feature is unavailable.

### Tip

- Pressing also answers a call placed on hold.
- When a video call is on hold, you can also answer the call by pressing <a> §</a>.
- Besides , and (for video call) you can also answer the call by pressing . x or when Any Key Answer (page 12-12) is set to ON.
- When you are unable to answer a call (ie: your handset is out of range, a call is in progress, etc.) divert calls to; a preset phone number (page 16-2) or Voicemail Center (page 16-3).

# Recording a Message to Answer Phone

Record a caller's message to your handset when you are unable to answer a voice call. Save up to five 30-second messages to Answer Phone.

## 1 Press and hold when a call is received

Outgoing message plays and recording starts.

 When recording capacity becomes full or the call ends, it stops automatically.

#### Vote

- Answer Phone is unavailable for video calls (page 5-1) and Call Waiting (page 16-4).
- When five messages are recorded, Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone.

#### Tip

- When the handset is closed, press and hold to record a message.
- To answer a call while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, press
- To adjust the volume while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, use .

# **Playing Recorded Messages**

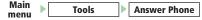
Main menu Tools Answer Phone

- **1** Select *Recordings* → ●
- **2** Select a message→●
  - " I indicates unchecked messages, and " I indicates checked messages.

### Tip

• Press in Standby to access Recordings list.

# **Deleting Recorded Messages**



- **1** Select *Recordings* → •
- 2 Select a message  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES$

# **Rejecting a Call**

1 Press 🗹 (Reject) when a call is received

### Tip

- When the Call Divert (page 16-2) and Voicemail (page 16-3) services are deactivated, you can reject an incoming call by pressing (Divert) when a call is received
- When you reject an incoming call received during a call with the Call
  Waiting (page 16-4) service activated, press (Menu) and select
  Reject Call.
- By activating Call Barring (page 12-12), you can reject all incoming calls automatically.

# **Engaged Call Operations**

# **Adjusting Earpiece Volume**

1 Press or or during a call

The current setting appears.

**2** Use 💲 to adjust the earpiece volume

### Tip

- You can adjust the earpiece volume by pressing or during a call.
- Even if the volume is changed during a call it returns to its original setting when the call ends.

## **Recording Other Party's Voice**

Voice Record allows you to record the other party's voice during a call. Maximum recording time is 60 seconds.

**1** During a call, press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Voice Record $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends.
 To stop recording manually, press

#### Tip

- The recording is automatically saved to the Ring Song · Tone folder (page 10-1).
- For details on playing Voice Record recordings, see page 14-33.

### **Number Memo**

Use the keypad to take a memo of a phone number or other number during a voice or video call. After the call ends, you can save the number to Phone Book or use it to make a call. You can store up to five number memos.

# Press the keys on the keypad during a call

After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.

- You can enter a total of up to 32 numbers and symbols (\*\*, #, +, -, P).
- See page 14-34 for details on how to view a number memo.

#### Tip

- Number Memo is available when making video calls, too.
- You can also save a number memo by pressing (Menu) and selecting Number Memo during a call.

## **Switching to Handsfree Operation**

Switching to the handsfree operation during a call enables you to hear the other party's voice through a speaker.

- 1 Press 🗑 ( 🕪) during a call
  - To cancel the handsfree operation, press 😭 ( 🔌 ).

# **Call Log**

The last 20 dialed numbers and received calls including Circle Talk calls can be viewed.

## **Viewing Dialed Numbers**

# 1 In Standby, press 📀

- To switch from the Dialed Number window to the Received Call window, press (○) or (○).
- In Dialed Number, the icons shown below appear.
  - lndicates outgoing voice calls.
  - Indicates outgoing video calls.
- For Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
  - Indicates outgoing individual Circle Talk calls.
  - Indicates outgoing group Circle Talk calls.

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-11) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from *Phone Book* in the Main menu (page 1-16).
- By selecting a phone number from the call log and pressing 

  , you can make a call.
- By selecting a person from the Circle Talk call log and pressing , you can make a Circle Talk call (page 6-2).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- When there are 20 Dialed Number records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you make a call to a Phone Book entry, the name saved to Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to *ON* when Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to *Hide*, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- From Dialed Number, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 6-2) / Intl.
   Calls (page 2-1) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / To Phone
   Book (page 4-2) / Add to List (page 12-13) / Delete / Hide My ID (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13) / Call Log Lock (page 2-8)

# **Viewing Received Calls**

# In Standby, press 💽

- To switch between received Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press 
   (♣/♣).
- In Received Call, the icons shown below appear.
  - √ Received Voice/Video calls

  - \*\* Rejected Voice/Video calls
  - #/# Rejected Voice/Video calls with no Caller ID
  - Received Voice calls from public phones
- For received Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
  - Received Circle Talk calls
  - Missed Circle Talk calls
  - Rejected Circle Talk calls
  - Rejected Circle Talk calls with no Caller ID

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-11) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from *Phone Book* in the Main menu (page 1-16).
- By selecting a phone number from the call log and pressing , you can make a call.
- By selecting a person from the received Circle Talk call log and pressing

   , you can make a Circle Talk call (page 6-2).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Received Call record.
- When there are 20 Received Call records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you receive a call from a Phone Book entry, the name saved to
  Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you receive a call from a
  Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to ON when Secret
  Mode (page 13-3) is set to Hide, however, only the phone number is
  displayed.
- From Received Call, press ∑ (Menu) to perform the following:
   Voice Call / Video Call (page 5-1) / Circle Talk (page 6-2) / Intl.
   Calls (page 2-1) / Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9) / To Phone
   Book (page 4-2) / Add to List (page 12-13) / Delete / Hide My ID (page 12-13) / Show My ID (page 12-13) / Call Log Lock (right)

# **Setting Call Log Lock**

Set Call Log Lock to require Security Code for accessing Call Log (including Circle Talk Call Log).

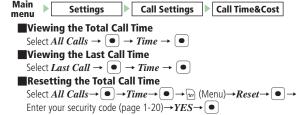
- 1 In Standby, press  $\bigcirc I \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Call \ Log \ Lock \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→●

Tip

• Call Log Lock can be set even when the Circle Talk Call Log is displayed.

### **Viewing Call Time**

Check the previous or total call time.



#### Note

- The displayed call time serves as a guide only.
- The total call time does not include mail communications, Web browsing, and Circle Talk connection and talking time.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be displayed for the total call time.

## **Viewing Call Costs**

View the cost for the last call or the total cost for all calls. The data for the total cost is saved to the USIM card.

Main Settings Call Settings Call Time&Cost

Viewing the Last Call Cost

Select Last Call → Cost → Cost

Viewing the Total Call Cost

Select All Calls → Cost → Cost

Select All Calls → Cost → Cost

Select All Calls → Cost → Cost

Resetting the Total Call Cost

Select  $All\ Calls \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Cost \rightarrow \bigcirc \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Reset \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your PIN2 code (page 1-3)  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Setting the Currency

■ Setting Call Cost Display

Select *Cost Display*  $\rightarrow$  *ON/OFF*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- The displayed call cost serves as a guide only and may differ from the actual call cost billed.
- Sum of charges appears for Multiparty Call (page 16-5).
- The total call cost does not include mail communication and Web browsing charges, and the charge for the number of remarks made in Circle Talk sessions.
- When you make an international call, the call cost is not displayed.

# **Setting Cost Limit**

Set maximum cost for your monthly voice/video calls.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Call Settings 
■ Call Time&Cost

- **1** Select *Cost Limit*→
  - If Cost Limit has been set, you can view the balance.
- **2** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Set Max Limit $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- 3 Enter your PIN2 code (page 1-3)→ (twice)→ Enter the maximum cost limit→ •

#### Note

 You cannot make voice and video calls if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit. A call will be disconnected if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit during the call.

# **Owner Information**

Display My Details (page 4-10) such as the phone number and email address of your handset.

**1** In Standby, press  $\bullet \rightarrow \square$   $\to My$  Details  $\to \bullet$ 

The owner information appears.

Tip

• Select *Phone Book* → *My Details* in Tab View (page 1-18).

## **Viewing Owner Information during a Call**

# Setting/Canceling Manner Mode

Set Mode Settings to Silent to avoid disturbing others in public areas. When manner mode is set, "##" appears.

- Turn the handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off your handset so that it does not disturb flight safety.
- In such places as hospitals and research institutes, where no use of cell phones is allowed, turn off your handset so that it does not affect precision apparatuses.
- In such quite places as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be careful so that your talking voice does not bother others around you.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

## **Activating Manner Mode**

1 In Standby, press and hold ##

Manner mode is set.

## **Canceling Manner Mode**

1 In Standby, press and hold ## while manner mode is set

Manner mode is canceled.

#### Note

- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in manner mode.
- If you set your answer status for Circle Talk to Auto Join in My Status (pages 20-4, 20-6), then you are automatically connected to Circle Talk, so you hear the other party's voice from the speaker when the handset is closed, even if manner mode is set.

### Tip

 Vibration and alarm settings in manner mode (page 12-2) can be changed.

# **Setting/Canceling Offline Mode**

Use offline mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In offline mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services, such as transmission of S! Mail/SMS are blocked.

When offline mode is set to ON, the signal strength indicator changes to " $\mathbb{N}$ ".



#### Note

- When offline mode is set to ON, incoming calls are blocked. Make sure
  offline mode is set to OFF if you need to use your handset as usual.
- Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard)) are not possible when offline mode is set to ON.

# **International Roaming**

Use your SoftBank handset to make voice calls when traveling outside Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international roaming service.
- For details, see Global Roaming Guide or contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- Be sure to carry Global Roaming Guide with you when you travel overseas.

## **Setting the Operator**

Switch operators according to the country or area. Operator selection can also be set to switch automatically.



- **1** Select *Auto/Manual*→
  - Setting Handset to Automatically Select Operator Select Automatic → ●
  - Selecting Operator Manually
    Select Manual → → Select an operator →
    - Available operators are indicated by the " III " or " IIII " indicator.

## **Adding an Operator**



- **1** Select Add Operator  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Empty  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - **■Entering an Operator Name**Select *Operator Name*Select *Operator Name* Enter an operator name
  - Entering a Country Code

    Select Country Code → → Enter a country code → ●

    Entering an Operator Code
  - ■Entering an Operator Code

    Select Operator Code → →Enter an operator code → ●
- **2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Save \rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - Information must be entered in all fields to save the entry.

# **Set Priority For Operator Selection**

Set priority for an operator when operator selection is set to *Automatic* (page 2-11).



- **1** Select *Set Priority*→
  - Adding an Operator at the End of the Priority List

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add to Bottom $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select an operator $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Specifying a Target Location and Adding an Operator to the Priority List

Press  $\stackrel{\smile}{\longrightarrow}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Insert $\rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\bullet}{\longrightarrow}$  Select an operator $\rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\bullet}{\longrightarrow}$  (twice) $\rightarrow$  Select a position to insert $\rightarrow$   $\stackrel{\bullet}{\longrightarrow}$ 

■Changing the Priority Setting of Operators

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Move* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an operator $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (twice) $\rightarrow$  Select a position to move to $\rightarrow$ 

■Deleting an Operator

Select an operator  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $YES \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## Setting the System Mode (3G/GSM)

You may be required to change the System Mode depending on the country or region you are visiting. The recommended settings are 3G for Japan and Automatic for overseas.

## Selecting the Network



- ■Setting Automatic
- Select  $Automatic \rightarrow \bullet$
- Select 3G o
- Setting GSM Only Select  $GSM \rightarrow \bullet$

# **Calling from Outside Japan**

 Before using your handset overseas, you may need to change the System Mode setting (page2-12).

## **Making Calls to Other Countries**

- 1 In Standby, enter a phone number→ w (Menu)→
  Intl. Calls→ •
- **2** Select a country→ •

"+" (international code) and the country code are added before the phone number. "0" is omitted when the first digit of the entered phone number is "0"

Select *Japan* when calling a number in Japan. Always add Japan's country code when calling a Japanese mobile phone, regardless of the recipient's location.

3 Press 🕜

### Making Calls within the Country

1 In Standby, enter a phone number

Enter the entire phone number, starting with the area code. Do not omit the first "0".

2 Confirm the entered phone number and press 🖊

## **Manually Entering Country Code**

- - "+" is entered.
- **2** Enter a country code
  - For country codes, see SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp).
- 3 Enter a phone number

If area code begins with "0", omit the "0".

4 Confirm the entered phone number and press 🕜

# **About Emergency Calls**

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard)) are available, even when the following restrictions are set.

- Password Lock (page 13-2)
- Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-6)\*
- Call Barring (page 16-6)
- \* When emergency numbers are saved to Number List (page 13-6).

### Note

- During global roaming (page 2-11), use the phone numbers of the emergency services of the country you are in. Confirm the phone numbers beforehand. A connection cannot be guaranteed in every country and area because operation differs depending on the wireless network, wireless signal and function settings of your handset.
- If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.
- An emergency call cannot be made while you are performing data communication in an area with GSM coverage.
- If you change the emergency telephone numbers (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) registered on the Number List (page 13-6) then emergency calls are not possible when outgoing calls are restricted (page 13-6).

# **About Text Entry**

Enter hiragana, katakana, kanji, alphanumerics, symbols, pictographs and emoticons.

There are four kinds of input methods: Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-8), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in the text entry window using Standard mode.

### **Text Entry Window**



- ① Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed is displayed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function.
- 2 Indicates the current entry mode.
- ③ Selects the range of text.

  By pressing when a text range is selected, you can perform operations such as copying or saving the selected text (pages 3-11, 3-12).
- ④ By pressing 
   (Menu), you can perform operations such as arranging or editing mail text (pages 3-12, 17-6).

### **Switching Text Entry Modes**

- 1 In a text entry window, press 🖫
  - Unavailable text entry modes are not displayed.
- **2** Select an input mode→●

Input mode is switched.

### Input Mode Icons

- 🐻 : Kanji (hiragana)
- : Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- : Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
- a : Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
- : Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case
- . Double-byte Hullibers
- Single-byte numbers

**URL**: Enter addresses from the address library (page 3-8).

**Pict**: Enter pictographs.

(^-^): Enter emoticons.

My Pict: Enter pictographs in My Pictograms folder.

### Tip

 In Input Method (page 3-15), you can switch between Standard mode, Beeper mode, T9 mode, and Multi-tap mode. The above icons are displayed in Standard Mode. If you switch to Beeper Mode, the icon changes from " # " to " # ".

# Key Assignment (Standard Mode)

Input Mode Key	Kanji/Hiragana* (Double-byte)	Katakana (Single-byte)	Upper case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Lower case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Numbers (Double & Single-byte)
1 85	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	アイウエオアイウエオ	.@1	.@1	1
S 'y'	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABC2	abc2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEF3	def3	3
4 to	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5.5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKL5	jkl5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフへホ	MN06	mno6	6
7 st	まみむめも	ZEVXE	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
8 **	やゆよゃゅょ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9.5	らりるれろ	םטוועל	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
	わをんー、。	ワヲン- 、。	~/?!0	~/?!0	0
X 182	Pictographs, Emoticons, Custom, * (dakuten), * (handakuten), — (cho-on), 、 (touten), 。 (kuten)	* (dakuten), * (handakuten), — (cho-on), 、 (touten), 。 (kuten)	Pictographs, Em	oticons, Custom	Pictographs, Emoticons, Custom
# A/a	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Symbols, Alphanumerics, Toggle case Toggle case Toggle case			Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL	
•	Determine entered text/finish text entry Fini				Finish text entry
••••	Move cursor, Insert line breaks by pressing  Move up and down the list of conversion predictions with  Move cursor  Move cursor  Move cursor  Insert line breaks by pressing  Move cursor  Insert line breaks by pressing  Move cursor			ng 😱	
2977/XE	Delete entered text (page 3-12)				
100 U.S.	Displa		_		
* 14/1 1					

 $<sup>^{\</sup>star}$  While assigning a reading in hiragana to an entry in the user dictionary (page 3-11), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and " - " (cho-on).

# **Entering Characters**

### Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana

Enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode, and it converts to kanji, etc. Example: Entering 須々木

# In a text entry window, enter すずき

- lacktriangle Press  $3 \stackrel{?}{=}$  (three times)  $\rightarrow \begin{picture}(10,0) \put(0,0){\line(1,0){10}} \put($ 2 . (twice).
- You can convert readings (hiragana) up to 40 characters long to kanji.

# Press 🤉

To exit the list and enter characters after. すずき, press 🧫.



# **3** Use ••• to select *須々木*→•

*酒々*木 is determined.

To finish text entry, press
 after accepting entered text.

#### Tip

• In kanji (hiragana) entry mode, entered text is converted in segments of words, phrases, and clauses. When it is not converted to your target kanji, change the range of selected text by using ••• and then try again by pressing ♀. For example, if you enter *Z*∌ やまさとし and convert by pressing ( ), ル 宫山聡 is displayed. If you want to segment it into こみや and まさとし, press 200年 as shown on the screen on the right, select Z みや with the cursor, and select your target kanji from the list of

conversion predictions by pressing (2).



• If you press X = after a character to which " " (dakuten) and " (handakuten) cannot be added while converting text. " — " (cho-on), ", " (touten) and ", " (kuten) are displayed.

### Lower Case (a, ⊃ etc.)

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Changing **5** to lower case

1 In a text entry window, press 1.5

あ is entered.

2 Press ## → •

Adding " or  $\ensuremath{^\circ}$ 

In kanji (hiragana) entry mode and single-byte katakana entry mode, you can add "  $\r$  " (dakuten) and "  $\r$  " (handakuten) to a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).

Example: Entering か

1 In a text entry window, press 2.5

カ' is entered.

2 Press (¥ is) → (•)

カi is determined.

With characters like / to which both " " " (dakuten) and
" " " (handakuten) can be added, you can switch between " " "
and " " " by pressing [X =].

Tip

When the cursor is on a character to which " " (dakuten) and " " (handakuten) cannot be added, or when the cursor is to the right of a character (unconverted), you can enter " — " (cho-on), " " (touten) and " " (kuten) by pressing \* ".

### **Phonetic Conversion**

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji. Example: Entering *鱸(すずき)* 

- 1 In a text entry window, enter すずき
- 2 Press (twice)

The kanji candidate is displayed.

- ●When *単漢候補* is not displayed in a text entry window, the word cannot be converted with phonetic conversion.
- **3** Select **#**→ •

艫 is determined.

#### Tip

 If you enter the following readings ( いっぱん、 がくじゅつ ...) in hiragana in kanji (hiragana) entry mode and switch to one kanji conversion by pressing ® (twice), the special characters shown in the figure are displayed.

Reading		Characters (symbols)				
いっぱん	b	#& ★@§☆, etc. These are included also in きごう.				
がくじゅつ	がくじゅつ $+-\pm \times \div =$ , etc. These are included also in きごう.					
かっる	2	" " ( ) , etc. These are included also in きごう.				
ぎりしっ	<b>υ ι τ</b> ΑΒΓ <i>αβγ</i> , etc.					
たんし	J١	゜′″℃¥\$, etc. These are included also in <i>きごう</i> .				
ろ し る	<b>3 し あ</b> АБВабв, etc.					
きじゅ	2	、。, . ・:, etc. These are included also in きごう.				
きご	ò	、。, . · :, etc.				
けいせん	h	—   г¬ <sup></sup> , etc.				

### Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in kanji (hiragana) entry mode. Example: Entering *TOM* (single-byte) in kanji (hiragana) entry mode

1 In a text entry window, press the key to which the character is assigned

- Press  $\mathbb{B}^{\cdot,\circ}$  (once) →  $\mathbb{B}^{\cdot,t}$  (three times) →  $\mathbb{D}^{\cdot,t}$  (once)  $\mathcal{D}_{\mathcal{B}}(\mathcal{E})$  is entered.
- 2 Press 🗟 (Kana)

The conversion candidates of the roman characters and katakana are displayed.

- By pressing (Kana)√ (Num.), you can switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.
- **3** Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to select TOM (single-byte)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

**TOM** (single-byte) is determined.

#### Tip

When you want to enter date and time, you can do so in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. For example, if you enter あかさわ by pressing 112233 0.2 and then press w (Num.), 12/30 or 12:30 are displayed.

### **Displaying Characters in Opposite Order**

In all the input modes except numeric, you can display unconverted characters on the cursor in the opposite order from the one on the Key assignments chart (page 3-2) by pressing .

Example: Entering the character assigned to 2.29

### Symbols

Double-byte and single-byte symbols can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press ## 25%
The double-byte symbol list is displayed.

**2** Select a symbol→●

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list disappears.

 To enter symbols continuously from the symbol window, select symbols and press

Tip

 Symbols that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the symbol window. You can enter symbols by selecting from the log area, too.

### **Alphanumerics**

Double-byte and single-byte alphanumerics can be entered.

# 1 In a text entry window, press # (twice)

The double-byte alphanumeric list is displayed.

The number of times times is pressed differs depending on the function.

# **2** Select an alphanumeric→●

The selected alphanumeric is entered and the alphanumeric list disappears.

• To enter alphanumerics continuously from the alphanumeric window, select alphanumerics and press 🖫.

### **Pictographs**

See page 23-14 for information about the pictographs that can be entered.

# In a text entry window, press 🖽

The pictograph list is displayed.

You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.

# **2** Select a pictograph→

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list disappears.

● To enter pictographs continuously from the pictograph window, select pictographs and press .

#### Tip

- Pictographs that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the pictograph window. You can enter pictographs by selecting from the log area, too.
- When you convert by pressing , pictographs may appear in the list of conversion predictions.

#### **Emoticons**

# In a text entry window, press ★ ☐ (twice)

The emoticon list is displayed.

● The number of times ★ is pressed differs depending on the function.

# **2** Select an emoticon→

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list disappears.

 To enter emoticons continuously from the emoticon window, select emoticons and press .

### Tip

- When you enter かお and convert it by pressing 🔾 , twelve different emoticons appear in the list of conversion predictions.
- You can enter emoticons by pressing → (^-^) in a text entry window, too.

### **Space**

1 In a text entry window, press 🕒

A space is entered.

 To enter spaces before converted character, select spaces from the symbol window (page 3-6).

### Line Break

1 In a text entry window, enter text and convert

**2** Press at a position where you want to insert a line break

" is entered and the cursor moves down to a new line.

 You may not be able to enter a line break according to the text entry window.

### Mail & Web Extensions

Enter part of an email address and URL easily using the address library. Example: Entering .co.jp, which is part of an email address

**1** In a text entry window, press → URL → •

The address library is displayed.

2 Select  $.co.jp \rightarrow \bullet$  .co.jp is entered.

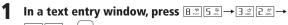
### Beeper Mode

Switch the input method (page 3-15) to Beeper mode. When entering text, enter two digits to make one character. The combinations are as follows:

						Press	next				
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	い	う	え	お	Α	В	С	D	Е
	2	か	き	<	け	2	F	G	Н	- 1	J
	3	さ	U	す	せ	そ	Κ	L	М	Ν	0
<b></b>	4	た	ち	つ	て	٢	Р	Q	R	S	Т
firs	5	な	ľ	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	Χ	Υ
Press first	6	は	ひ	131	^	ほ	Z	?	Ţ	_	/
_	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
	8	や	(	ゆ	)	よ	X	#			
	9	5	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	h	"	۰	6	7	8	9	0

- indicates upper and lower case are available. Press ## to switch immediately after character entry.
- When you enter "• and "•, all the characters will be single-byte.
- When you enter "♠", "♠" and "♠", hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When you enter "a" and "a", the characters will be in lower case.

Example: Entering よしお



1 5 5 ts →

よしお is determined.

# **Text Conversion Functions**

The handset is equipped with MobileRUPO, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine. MobileRUPO uses Al conversion, which predicts appropriate kanji from context (for example, 本を買う and 犬を飼う) and converts accordingly. Also, by using word predictions (below), you can enter a long mail message in a short time. If you save a kanji with an exceptional reading or



\* MobileRUPO is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

frequently used abbreviations to the user dictionary (page 3-11), you can call them up the next time you enter text.

### **Using Word Predictions**

There are two kinds of word predictions, conversion predictions and phrase predictions. Conversion predictions display the list of conversion predictions based on characters entered in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. Phrase predictions learn phrases from entered paragraphs so that the next time you enter the first part of the phrase, the list of conversion predictions for the following phrase is displayed. By using word predictions, you can enter target phrases easily and quickly.

The more you use word predictions, the more they improve as a predictive dictionary. And the accuracy of conversion predictions will improve. You can also disable word predictions or reset the predictive dictionary to the initial state (page 3-15).

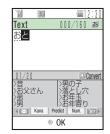
### **Conversion Prediction**

Example: Entering お父さん

1 In a text entry window, press

1 ☼ (five times) → 4 ⅙ (five times)

The conversion candidates predicted from おと are displayed in the Predict area.



**2** Press ♀→Use ••• to select お父さん→●

お父さん is determined.

### **Phrase Prediction**

Example: Entering the same phrase 渋谷でライブ that you have entered before

f 1 In a text entry window, enter  $m \omega$ 

渋谷 is displayed in the Predict area.

2 Press ♀→Use ❖ to select 渋谷→ ●

渋谷 is determined.  $\overline{C}$  is displayed in the Predict area.



Press ♀→Use ♣• to select ♂
→●

 $\mathcal{T}$  is determined.  $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{I}$  is displayed in the Predict area.



**4** Press ♀ → Use • to select ライブ→ •

ライブ is determined.

# Adding a Word to the User Dictionary

The user dictionary lets you save kanji with an exceptional reading or frequently used abbreviations up to 100 entries. To use words saved in the user dictionary, enter a reading that you saved and convert in a text entry window.

- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

  Customize→ → Word List→ → To Word List→

  •
- 2 Select  $Word \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter$  the word  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - You can enter up to 12 characters.
  - Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.
- **3** Select  $Reading \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter$  the reading  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - You can enter up to eight characters.
  - Enter the reading in double-byte hiragana.
- 4. Press **№** (OK)

Tip

You can save up to four entries with the same reading.

### Saving to User Dictionary during Text Entry

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · Paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range →
  - You can enter up to 12 characters.
  - Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.
- **3** Select *To Word List*→

A window appears where you can save the selected words to the user dictionary.

- **4** Select *Reading*  $\rightarrow$  **Enter the reading**  $\rightarrow$
- **5** Press **№** (OK)

### **Editing Saved Words**

- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

  Customize→ → Word List→ → Edit Word→ •
- 2 Select a word→ (Edit)→Select the word/ reading→ → Edit the word/reading→ •
- **3** Press **№** (OK)

# **Editing Text**

Text being entered in a text entry window can be edited. Text data saved on the clipboard (right) can be pasted in a text entry window.

### **Editing Entered Text**

The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

- To delete all the characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold
- **2** Enter a correct character

Tip

- When pressed when the cursor is at the end of a line of text, the
  last character is deleted. At this time, press and hold to delete all
  text.

# Copy/Cut/Paste

The clipboard is useful for text editing. Copied or cut words can temporarily be saved to the clipboard. The clipboard lets you copy or cut selected words or pictographs and paste them at the cursor position in a text entry window.

- In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · Paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●
- **3** Select *Cut*/*Copy*→ ●

The selected range of the characters are stored on the clipboard.

4 Position the cursor→ (Range · Paste) → Paste → Select the item from the clipboard →

Tip

- Up to 20 of the most recent items can be saved to the clipboard.

### Undo

During text input, you can undo operations.

1 In a text entry window, press  $\stackrel{}{\searrow}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Undo$ 

#### Note

• You cannot undo converted (page 3-14) or replaced (page 3-15) text.

### Insert

Select information from Notepad (page 14-17) or Phone Book (page 4-2) and insert it during text entry. You can also insert a signature (page 17-21) in an S! Mail or SMS message.

1 In a text entry window, press 
(Menu)→Insert

→

# 2 Select an item to be quoted

**■**Phone Book

Select **Phone Book** → ● → Select a Phone Book entry → ● → Select an item → ●

■Information Saved to My Details

Select *My Details* → Select an item →

Phrases

Select *Phrases*→ ● → Select a phrase → ●

**■**Emoticon

Select  $Emoticon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a category of the emoticon  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an emoticon  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

■Signature in an S! Mail/SMS

Select Signature → Signature 1/Signature 2→ ●

■Notepad

Select *Notepad* → Select a notepad → •

■Message

Select  $Message Box \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a message  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

**■**URL History

Select *URL History*→ • Select a URL→ •

#### Note

• Some items may not be inserted depending on the operating situation.

# Text Entry

### **Additional Functions**

### Saving to Notepad

Save selected text in a text entry window to Notepad (page 14-17).

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · Paste)

2 Select *Start* → ● → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●

**3** Select *To Notepad* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ Select a notepad $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

 If you save to a Notepad with a saved entry, it will be overwritten with the new entry.

## Saving to Phone Book

Save a selected phone number or email address in a text entry window to Phone Book. If a selected item is just numbers, it will be saved to **Phone Number**, and if it is single-byte alphanumerics, hyphens, or underbars containing a single "@", it will be saved to **Email**.

• For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · Paste)

2 Select Start → ● → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●

**3** Select To Phone Book  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Add New|Add  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

 If a selected item contains characters or symbols that cannot be saved to Phone Book, it won't be saved to Phone Book.

### Tip

 Even if selected numbers contain "\pm\#/P-+()" in between, they will be recognized as a telephone number. However, "/()" will be omitted when they are saved.

### **Replacing Previously Converted Text**

Select previously converted text and replace it. However, kanji and pictographs cannot be replaced collectively.

In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · Paste)

2 Select Start → ● → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●

**3** Select *Convert*→

**■**Converting Hiragana to Kanji

Select  $Kana/Kanji \rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select the conversion candidates  $\rightarrow$ 

**■Convert All into Full Width**Select *Full Width*•

■Convert All into Half Width
Select *Half Width* →

■Convert All into Upper Case
Select *Upper Case* ●

### Replacing Text with Text Saved to the Clipboard

Replace selected text with text saved to the clipboard (page 3-12).

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ (Range · Paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●
- **3** Select *Replace* → → Select a character to replace from the clipboard → ●

### Deleting

- 1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→⑤ (Range·Paste)
- 2 Select Start → → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → ●
- **3** Select *Delete*→•

### Resetting a Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Reset what the dictionaries learned in Word Predictions (page 3-9) to the initial state.

1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

Customize→ • → Reset Learned→ •

**2** Select *Prediction|Conversion* $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### **Setting Word Predictions**

Set whether to use Word Predictions (page 3-9) or not.

- 1 In a text entry window, press ☑ (Menu)→

  Customize→ → Prediction→ → Predict Textl

  Phrase→ •
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

### **Setting the Input Method**

Select the input method for entering from Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-8), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode.

- 1 In a text entry window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Customize  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Input Method  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select Standard|Beeper|T9|Multi-tap→

### Changing the Font Size

The font size displayed in a text entry window can be changed.

- 1 In a text entry window, press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Customize  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Font Size  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select a font size→ ●

### **Custom Window**

Save frequently used symbols and pictographs to the custom window and enter them from there easily.

- 1 In a text entry window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Customize  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Custom Window  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- - Setting Display of the Custom Window Select  $Display \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Display/Do \ not \ Display \rightarrow \bigcirc$

### **Creating Original Emoticons**

- 1 In a text entry window, press  $(^--^-) \rightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  User Created  $\rightarrow$
- 2 Select the item not registered→ (Edit)→Create an emoticon→ (twice)

# **Saving to Phone Book**

Your handset can save up to 1,000 Phone Book entries. You can also save Phone Book entries to the USIM card and a memory card. The maximum number of entries you can save depends on the capacity of the USIM card or memory card.

### **Back-up Important Information**

When the battery pack is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

		Support	ed/Not Su	pported
Item	Description	Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card
Name/ Last Name	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select	0	0	)
Name/ First Name	Name when saving to USIM card.)			
Reading- Last	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select <b>Reading</b> when saving to USIM	0	0	
Reading- First	card.)			0
Memory Number	A four-digit number (Entry Number)	0	0	0
Phone Number	Enter up to five numbers on Phone Memory/one on USIM card (32 digits each).	0	0	0

		Support	ed/Not Su	pported
Item	Description	Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card
Email	Enter up to five addresses on Phone Memory (128 single-byte alphanumerics each) / one on USIM card (60 single-byte alphanumerics).	0	0	0
Address	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/number (64 characters).	0	0	-
Job Title	Enter up to 32 characters.	0	0	_
Company	Enter up to 32 characters.	0	0	_
Birthday	Enter birth date.	0	0	_
URL	Enter up to 128 bytes.	0	0	_
Group	Entries can be sorted into groups.	0	0	0
Picture	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/messages.	0	-	_
Options	Set external light, ringtone, secret setting, etc. individually for each Phone Book entry.			_
Location	<b>Set</b> and display location information.		_	_
Note	Enter up to 256 characters.	0	_	_

### Adding a New Entry

Enter a name, phone number and email address. Storage place of Phone Book entries can be specified beforehand (page 4-11).

Main menu

Phone Book

**1** Select  $Add New \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**■**Entering a Name

 Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear. To correct reading, select Reading-Last/Reading-First.

**■**Entering Phone Numbers

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select a phone number type  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■ To enter a manual hyphen "-" or a pause (page 14-43), press (Menu) while entering a phone number and select *Manual Hyphen*/*Pause*(*P*).

**■**Entering Email Addresses

Select  $Email \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter an email address  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an email type  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Press (OK)

Note

 When you save to USIM Phone Book (page 4-11), enter both the first name and last name in the Name field. Tip

- You can also save a new entry in the following method:
   In Standby, press ♀ → ☎ (Create)
- To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.
- If the same name as you enter has already been saved in the existing Phone Book, pressing (OK) displays a message asking whether to overwrite the name. Select NO to save as a new entry.

### Setting a Picture

Main menu Phone Book

**1** Select Add New  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

**■**Capturing New Image

Select  $Picture \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Take \ Picture \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Take \ a \ picture \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Selecting from Data Folder

Select *Picture*→ ● → *Phone Memory/Memory Card*→ ● → *Pictures/Digital Camera*→ ● → Select a picture → ●

- If the selected picture is too large, change the size (page 7-19).
- Press 🖆 (OK)
  - To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

#### Note

 If Property (page 10-7) is not available for forwarding, the picture file cannot be saved as Picture.

# **Setting the Ringtone & Other Options**

Main menu

Phone Book

**1** Select  $Add\ New \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Options \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### **■**External Light

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→

■ ExternalLight → Select a color/OFF/Same as Phone

→ ■

### **■**Ringtone Volume

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification  $\rightarrow$  Ringtone Vol.  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Options/Same as Phone  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

### Ringtone Pattern

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification→

→ Ringtone→ → Patterns/Melodies/Phone Memory/

Memory Card/Same as Phone→ → Select a pattern→ →

#### **■**Vibration Pattern

Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification  $\rightarrow$  Vibration  $\rightarrow$  Select a pattern/OFF/Same as Phone  $\rightarrow$ 

### Ring Duration for Incoming Messages and Hot Status Notifications

Select  $Message/Notification \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set$   $Duration/1 \ Cycle/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter the ringing time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

### **■**Folder for Saving Incoming Messages

Select  $Message \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Message \ Folde \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select a folder/ $None \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Secret Setting

Select  $Secret \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

- When Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to Show, an entry with Secret set to ON is displayed. "a" appears for the entry.
- Name Display on the External Display

Select *Ext. Display*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *ON/OFF/Same as Phone*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- Press 🗐 (OK)
  - To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set

### Tip

- If you select *Same as Phone*, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 12-3). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 12-9).
- When you make a call to a party with Secret set to ON and Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to Hide, only the phone number is recorded in Dialed Calls.
- When you receive a call from a party with Secret set to ON and Secret Mode is set to Hide, only the phone number is displayed.

## **Setting Location Information**

Main menu Phone Book

Select Position → Start positioning → → (OK)

Selecting from Location Log

Select Location Logs→ Select location information→

(OK)

■ Selecting from Location Memos

Select My Locations → Select location information → 

(OK)

Selecting from Picture File

Select My Pictures → Select a file with location information information information

Press 🖾 (OK)

 To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

## **Setting Other Information**

Main Phone Book

**1** Select Add New  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

### Address/Job Title/Company

Select  $Personal\ Info$ .  $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow$  Enter information  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

### ■Birthday

Select  $Personal\ Info. 
ightarrow igotheta Birthday 
ightarrow igotheta 
ightarrow Enter the date 
ightarrow igotimes (0K)$ 

 Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit prefix it with a 0.

#### **URL**

■Group

Select *No Group* → Select a group → ●

Note

Select  $Note \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter a reminder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

**■**Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select the current Entry Number  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a new Entry Number  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# 2 Press 🗐 (OK)

To save the entry, the Name, Phone Number or Email needs to be set.

#### Tip

If Storage Place (page 4-11) is set to *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can select a group from groups saved in Phone Memory. If it is set to *USIM*, you can select a group from groups saved in USIM.

# Adding an Entry from Call Log

Main Phone Book Call Log

 To add the phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select Add and select the entry.

Tip

- You can add a phone number or email address from the received messages.
- After entering a phone number, you can also press to add the phone number.
- In Standby, you can also display Call Log by pressing o or •.

# **Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries**

 When Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to *Hide*, the number of entries other than those with Secret set to *ON* is displayed.

Main Phone Book

- **1** Select *Memory Status* →
  - Press (Count) or (Rate) to switch between the number of entries and the usage rate.

# **Setting Groups**

Set the group name and icon. For each group, the external light, ringtone volume, ringtone pattern and vibration for incoming calls/messages can be set. However priority is given to the setting of each Phone Book entry.

### **Group Names and Icons**

Main menu Phone Book Group

- **1** Select a group→●
  - Press (Menu) and select To USIM or To Phone to switch between the Phone Memory and the USIM.
- 2 Select the Group Name field→ →Enter a group name → ●
- **3** Select a group icon→
- 4 Press (OK)

Tip

<b>Group Options</b>
Main menu Phone Book Group
<b>1</b> Select a group→
<b>2</b> Select <i>Options</i> →•
■External Light
Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification—
$\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ ExternalLight $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ Select a color/OFF/Same as Phone
<b>→</b>
Ringtone Volume
Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification-
$\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ Ringtone Vol. $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ Options/Same as Phone $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$
Adjust the volume→
Ringtone Pattern
Select Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification—



■ Ring Duration for Incoming Messages and Hot Status Notifications

 $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Vibration  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a pattern/OFF/Same as Phone  $\rightarrow$ 

Select  $Message/Notification \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Duration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Set$   $Duration/1 \ Cycle/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Enter the ringing time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

```
■Folder for Saving Incoming Messages
```

Select  $Message \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Message \ Folde \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$  Select a folder/ $None \rightarrow \bullet$ 

3 Press (OK)

### Tip

 While selecting a group, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the group, some items may not appear):

#### Reset/To USIM/To Phone

- While selecting *Options*, press (Menu) to perform the following: Reset Options
- If you select Same as Phone, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 12-3). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 12-9).

# **Using Phone Book**

1 In Standby, press 🔾

 Press o or to display the previous or next row of the Japanese syllabary.

**2** Select an entry→ •

 Press o or o to display the previous or next entry of the same row.

### ■Making a Call

Select a phone number→

✓

### ■Sending an S! Mail or SMS Message

- For details on creating S! Mail, see page 17-4.
- For details on creating SMS, see page 17-9.

Tip

- In Standby, press and hold [1.2] to [9.2] to display the search window of the row assigned to each dial key.
- When Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to Show, an entry with Secret (page 4-3) set to ON is displayed. " " appears for the entry.
- The current status (Hot Status information) is displayed for Phone Book entries that are saved to Hot Status Members List.
- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-11) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can also select *Phone Book* from the Main menu to display Phone Book entries.

#### Tip

- After displaying Phone Book entries, press (Menu) to perform the following:
  - Call/Intl. Calls/Search Mode/Delete/Export/Send vCard/Copy/ Move/Change View/Sort by/Hot Status/Active Window
- After displaying Phone Book entries, you can also select an entry and press to make a call. If the entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

## **Switching Phone Books**

Switch between *Phone/USIM*, *Phone Memory*, *USIM* and *Memory Card* Phone Books.

- Phone Memory Phone Book
- USIM Phone Book
- Memory Card Phone Book
- In Standby, press 🔉
- 2 Press → (Menu)→Change View→ → Select a storage place → ●

### **Phone Book Search Modes**

Select one of the six search modes. The selected search mode is used the next time you open Phone Book.

1 In Standby, press 🔉

**2** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Search Mode  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■By Displaying the List of Phone Book Entries (Default)
Select List View→ ● → Select an entry→ ●

■By Entering the First Character of a Reading in 2-touch (convenient for Japanese names)

Select  $By 2\text{-}Touch \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Press a key from } \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$  to  $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ ,  $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ , or  $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Press a key from  $\bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$   $\bigcirc \bigcirc$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■By Entering a Reading

Select By Reading → ● → Enter a reading → ● → Select an entry

→ ●

By Entering a Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select By Memory No.→ → Enter an Entry Number→ ◆

■By Entering a Phone Number

Select By Phone No.→ ● →Enter a phone number → Select an entry → ●

■By Selecting a Group
Select Group Filter→ ●→Select a group→ ●→Select an entry
→ ●

Tip

The keypad assignment used in By 2-Touch is as follows. For example, press ᠍ 5 ₺ to display the entries with reading starting from ₺ . To display roman characters, press ¥ ₺ . To display other characters, press ₩ ₺ .

			Press next					
		1	2	3	4	5		
	1	あ	い	ò	え	お		
	2	か	き	<	け	Ŋ		
	3	さ		す	שׁ	そ		
t	4	た	ち	n	7	٢		
≟	5	な	C	ぬ	ね	の		
Press first	6	は	ひ	131	^	ほ		
=	7	ま	み	む	め	も		
	8	や	l	ゆ		4		
	9	6	b	る	れ	ろ		
	0	わ	を	h	_	_		

 The characters in the Reading field of Phone Book are used to search an entry in By 2-Touch.

### **Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries**

1 In Standby, press  $\bigcirc \rightarrow \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Sort by \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select *AlphabetlBirthday*→

# **Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries**

Copy or move entries between Phone Memory, Memory Card and USIM Phone Books.

- 1 In Standby, press 🔾

  - | Copying/Moving Multiple Entries
    | Press | Menu → Copy/Move → Select Multi → Select entries → | Gopy / G (Move) | Move
  - Copying/Moving All Entries

    Press P (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Copy/Move  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select Phone Memory|USIM|Memory Card→

  ●

### Note

 The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the Phone Memory, Memory Card or USIM Phone Book (page 4-1).

### Tip

 While selecting multiple entries, press (Menu) to perform the following:

View/Mark All/Unmark All

# **Editing Phone Book Entries**

Edit and delete entries in Phone Book.

- In Standby, press 😯
- **2** Select an entry→
- **3** Select an item→ → Edit an item → ●
- 4 Press (OK)→SavelSave as New→

### Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 12-11) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.

# **Deleting Phone Book Entries**

1 In Standby, press 🔉

**■**Deleting One Entry

**■**Deleting Multiple Entries

**■**Deleting All Entries

Press 
$$\bigcirc$$
 (Menu) $\rightarrow$  **Delete** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **All** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$  **YES** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Owner Information**

Save your own information to *My Details*. Your name, reading, five phone numbers, five email addresses, picture, address, birthday and location information can be saved. Also, check saved information during a call (page 2-10) or insert it into a message.

## **Adding Information**

Main menu Phone Book My Details

**1** Select an item $\rightarrow_{\begin{subarray}{c} \end{subarray}}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \begin{subarray}{c} \end{subarray}} \rightarrow$  Enter information $\rightarrow$ 

Setting Your Name Select  $Name \rightarrow \bigvee_{k} (Menu) \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigvee_{k} (OK)$ 

# 2 Press 🗐 (OK)

### Tip

- For details on setting items see page 4-2.
- If you press (Send) in Step 1, you can send your own phone number by S! Mail or infrared communication.

### **Using Your Location Information**

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ My Details

- **Select** *Personal Info.*  $\rightarrow$  *Location Exist*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)
  - If you have not set location information, select *No Location*.
  - Checking the Map from Location Information
    Select *Open Map* → Send/Ask Once Only → Start the navigation application and display the map
    - If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.
  - Sending Location Information by S! Mail

Select *Location Mail*→ • Create a message

**■Editing Location Information**Select *Add Location* •

■ Deleting Location Information
Select Delete → •

#### Tip

 If you have not set location information, you can only select Add Location.

# **Using Speed Calling to Make Calls**

Enter the last two digits of the Memory Number (Entry Number) 0000 to 0099 of Phone Memory Phone Book and press 🕜 to make calls.

1 In Standby, enter the last two digits of the Entry Number→✓

A call is made to the party specified by the Entry Number.

### Tip

- When the Entry Number is 0000 to 0009, enter the last single digit only and press
- If Phone Book entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

# **Setting Phone Book**

# **Setting the Default Storage Place**

Preset the default storage place for new Phone Book entries.

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ Settings

- **1** Select Select Storage→
- 2 Select Always Ask|Phone Memory|USIM|Memory Card→•
  - If you want to set the storage place every time you save an entry, select Always Ask.

## **Prohibiting Use of Phone Book**

Main menu Phone Book Settings

- **1** Select *Phone Book Lock* $\rightarrow$  •
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **3** Select  $Lock \rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - If you want to use Phone Book, enter your security code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock.

#### Note

 If Phone Book Lock is set to Lock, speed calling (left) cannot be used to make calls.

### **S! Address Book**

Use S! Address Book to save and manage the handset's Phone Book on the network server.

The following functions are available for S! Address Book.

Function	Description		
Backup (Synchronization)	Back up Phone Book to the server from the handset. Select manual or automatic synchronization (page 4-14).		
Reload (Synchronization)	Reload Phone Book on the server to the handset. Select from the three reloading methods (page 4-15).		
Editing*	Edit Phone Book on the server from the PC.		
Import/Export*	Download Phone Book on the server to the PC and upload Phone Book in the PC to the server.		
Birthday Notification*	If the server's Phone Book has the birthday information, receive an SMS message from the server notifying you of people's birthdays.		

<sup>\*</sup> For details, see the website below (as of January, 2007). http://www.softbank.jp/SAB

### **About Subscription**

- A separate subscription is required to use the S! Address Book service. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service.
- In case you replace your handset, the compatibility with a new model is as follows:
  - 3G series (compatible with S! Address Book): Phone Book stored on the server is retained, and you can use it from your new handset.
  - 3G series (not compatible with S! Address Book): The service of S! Address Book continues and Phone Book on the server is retained. However, you cannot access to Phone Book from your new handset (you can access from a PC).
  - V3, V4, V5, V6, and V8 series: S! Address Book is canceled automatically, and Phone Book on the server is deleted.
- When you cancel S! Address Book, Phone Book on the server is deleted.

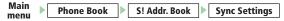
### **Operating Precautions**

- If you forget your password, perform the following:
   In Standby, press → 設定・申込 →利用状況の確認
  - · Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Try again if synchronization failed due to poor reception or a low battery.
   Synchronization may have taken place with *Normal Sync* regardless of the synchronization type setting.
- If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of Normal Sync, From Client, or Backup after deleting all the entries on Phone Book on your handset, Phone Book on the server is deleted. If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of Normal Sync, From Server, or Restore after deleting all the entries in Phone Book on the server, Phone Book on your handset is deleted.
- Of Phone Book items, *Picture* and *Personal Info*. are exempted from synchronization. These items set in the handset are all deleted if you synchronize in *Restore* type.
- SoftBank is not liable for any loss of information in Phone Book on the handset and the server due to cancellation of the service or errors during synchronization.
- In order to maintain consistency between Phone Book on your handset and the server, we recommend that you synchronize Phone Book regularly.
   It may take time to synchronize after you carry out a lot of editing (modification, addition, deletion, etc.) on Phone Book on your handset or the server.

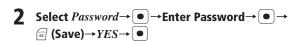
### **Setting User ID and Password**

Set your User ID and Password to use S! Address Book. User ID and Password are sent to you by an SMS message after subscription.

- If the message haven't arrived, see the information about in case you have forgotten the Password on the left.
- User ID is your phone number.



**1** Select  $User\ ID \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter\ User\ ID \rightarrow \bullet$ 



### **Synchronizing Phone Book**

1 Select *Start*→ ● →Enter your security code (page 1-20)

Follow the onscreen instructions.

#### Note

 Upon starting synchronization, your handset is connected to the Internet. A communication fee is charged during Internet connection.
 Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

#### Tip

- When synchronizing for the first time, *Normal Sync* is used regardless of the synchronization type setting (page 4-15).
- The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. *Normal Sync* is set by default.

# **Setting Synchronization**

### **Automatic Synchronization**

Select from manual and automatic synchronization. If you select automatic mode, synchronization is performed at fixed intervals.

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ S! Addr. Book ▶ Sync Settings

- **1** Select  $Auto Sync \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - When you select ON, set time interval to synchronize. Enter your security code (page 1-20) and select from Daily, Weekly and Monthly and then set the time for Daily, day of the week and time for Weekly, or date and time for Monthly.
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Save) $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

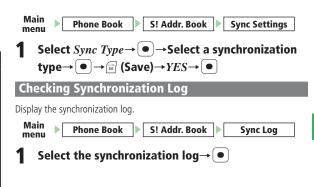
#### Tip

 The synchronization type is set to the same type for manual and automatic synchronization. The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. Normal Sync is set by default.

### **Synchronization Type**

Select from the following types.

Туре	Description	Note		
Normal Sync	Back up any changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book to the server and download any new information in the server's Phone Book to the handset simultaneously.	If information in the same field in both the handset and on the server has been changed, the information on the server takes priority.		
From Client	Back up changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book to the server.	Changes to the information in the server's Phone Book are not reflected to the handset.		
From Server	Upload changes to the information in the server's Phone Book to the handset.	Changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book are not reflected to the server.		
Backup	Delete the existing Phone Book data on the server and back up all Phone Book data in the handset to the server.	All the information in the server's Phone Book is deleted.		
Restore	Delete the existing Phone Book data in the handset and reload all Phone Book data on the server to the handset.	All the information in the handset's Phone Book is deleted All items exempt from synchronization (page 4-13) will not be uploaded.		



# **About Video Calls**

A video call enables two parties with video call compatible handsets to send images to each other while they talk.

- The video call function of your handset complies with the 3G-324M international standard for 3G mobile videophones.

### Indicators



- 3G Area
- Mute My Voice
- Mute All
- Faster Moving Mode
- Standard Mode
- ★ Better Picture Mode
- (I) Handsfree ON
- M Image Transfer OFF
- Sending Picture
- Voice Connection Established
- □ Video Connection Established

# **Making a Video Call**

While you are making a video call, pictures being taken by the camera will be sent over to the other party. You can also select to send a still image instead of pictures now being taken. You may want to switch between the Main camera and the Sub camera during a video call.

# Enter a phone number and press 🖫

The video call is made.

 When Self-view (page 5-4) is set as ON, confirm an image of yourself as a camera image and press to send outgoing image.

# **2** Press no end the call

#### Note

 When Cost Limit (page 2-9) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

### Tip

- When you make a video call to a device that does not support video calls, a warning message appears and you can make a voice call. When you make a video call to a party who is not in an area with 3G-network coverage, a warning message appears.
- During video calls, press → (Menu) to perform the following:
   End Call/Hold/Mute/Screen Set./Alt. Picture (page 5-3)/Send
   Picture (page 5-4)/Phone Book (page 4-7)/Call Log (page 2-6)/My
   Details (page 2-10)

# **Answering a Video Call**

1 Press 🖊 / 🖫 when a video call is received

A confirmation window appears. Select **YES** or **NO** and press • to send or block your outgoing image.

- You can send an image of yourself to the other party after confirming your image by pressing (6) when a call is received.
- **2** Press no end the call

### Tip

- By pressing , you can also answer an incoming video call.
- You can place an incoming video call on hold (page 2-3).
- You can reject an incoming video call if you press (Menu) and select
   *Reject Call* when a call is received.
- You can answer video calls only by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 12-12) is set to ON.
- If you miss a video call, Information Prompt (page 1-9) appears.
- When you receive a video call from a Phone Book entry, the name appears on the display. If you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to *ON* when Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to *Hide*, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while a video call is being received, use
   .

#### Tip

During calls, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 End Call/Hold/Mute/Screen Set./Alt. Picture (page 5-3)/Send Picture (page 5-4)/Phone Book (page 4-7)/Call Log (page 2-6)/My Details (page 2-10)

# **Engaged Video Call Operations**

### **Adjusting the Speaker Volume**

1 Press 🗘 during a call

# **Muting Microphone**

- **2** Select *Mute My VoicelMute All*→●
  - To cancel the mute, press during a call.

### Switching between the Earpiece & Speaker

Switch between the earpiece and speaker during a call.

**1** During a call, press **⑤** (♠/**﴿**)

### **Using Zoom**

**1** During a call, use •••

Note

• Zoom is unavailable while you are sending a picture.

Switching between the Main Camera and Sub Camera

1 During a call, press •

### Switching Screen Display

Select the screen display method during a call.

**1** During a call, press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Screen Set. $\rightarrow$  •

**2** Select Switch→●

■Displaying a Large Incoming Image and a Small Outgoing Image

Select *In. Prior*→

Displaying Only the Incoming Image

Select *Incoming Only*→

■Displaying a Small Incoming Image and a Large Outgoing Image

Select *Out. Prior*→

**■**Displaying Only the Outgoing Image

Select *Outgoing Only*→

## **Changing the Image Quality**

Change the preset Image Quality (page 5-4) during a call.

During a call, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Screen Set. $\rightarrow$ 

**2** Select *Image Quality*→

**3** Select the output format→●

# **Changing the Alternative Image**

**1** During a call, press  $\mathbf{w}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Alt$ . Picture $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

**2** Select Alt. Pic.  $ON \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■Selecting from a Preinstalled Image Select *Preset*→

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card
Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select an image
→ ●

 When a selected image does not fit the image size previously set up, adjust the image size (page 7-19).

Tip

 After ending a call, the alternative picture will return to the setting specified in the Alternative Picture setting (page 5-4). 5

# Sending a Picture

- **1** During a call, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Send Picture $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select Send Pic.  $ON \rightarrow \bullet$
- 3 Select *Phone Memory Memory Card* → Select an image → ●

# **Video Call Settings**

Methods for making and receiving video calls and images to be displayed can be set beforehand.

# Setting the Alternative Image

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select Alt. Picture  $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - If you select *OFF*, the camera image will be sent out.
  - You can change the alternative picture during a call (page 5-3).
  - Selecting from a Preinstalled Image
    Select *Preset*→ (twice)
  - Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card
    Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select an image
    → (twice)

## **Setting Self-view Confirmation**

Confirm the self-view (the image to be sent) by activating the Sub camera automatically before sending out a video call.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

1 Select Self-view  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $ON/OFF \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Setting the Image Quality**

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- **1** Select *Image Quality*→
- **2** Select the output format→●
  - You can change the image quality during a call (page 5-3).

# Setting Auto Answer for Video Calls

When the Auto Answer function for video calls is set to *ON*, video calls received from phone numbers in the Auto Answer list are answered automatically without having to press a key. Incoming video calls are received as usual when your handset is closed.

 Regardless of manner mode setting (page 12-1), the speaker will beep and the video call is automatically connected.

## Adding a Phone Number to the Auto Answer List for Video Calls

Main 

Settings 

Call Settings 

Video Call

- **Select** Auto Answer  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Answer List  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- 2 Press (Add)→Enter your security code (page 1-20)

## ■Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select **Phone Book** → Select a Phone Book entry → Select a phone number → (twice)

## ■Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (twice)

# ■Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select *Call Log*  $\rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow$  (twice)

#### Tip

 When a phone number has already been added, press (Menu) after selecting Answer List to perform the following: Edit/Delete

## **Setting Mute**

Either sending voice or sending & receiving voices can be muted during video calls.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Video Call

- Select *Mute*→
- **2** Select *Mute My VoicelMute All*→●
  - You can set the mute setting during a call (page 5-2).

## Setting the Speaker for Video Calls

Set whether the other party's voice is output through the Stereo Speaker or the Earpiece. Set it to  $\mathbf{ON}$  if you want to hear the voice from the Stereo Speaker.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Call Settings 
■ Video Call

- Select *Loud Speaker*→●
- 2 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

# **Setting Hold Image**

Set the image to be sent out to the other party while placing an incoming call on hold or while holding the call you are making.



- **1** Select Hold Setting→ → Hold on Call|Hold
  - $Answer \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$
  - Selecting from a Preinstalled Image Select *Preset* → (twice)
  - Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card
    Select Phone Memory/Memory Card → Select an image
    → (twice)

# Circle Talk Basics 811T/813T

Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets. Press and hold (1) to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check the Circle Talk session window to check each participant's status and see who is currently talking.

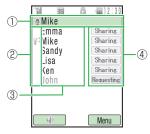
#### Note

- If IP Service (page 13-4) is set to *OFF*, Circle Talk is unavailable.
- When Hot Status connection status (page 20-6) is Offline, Circle Talk is unavailable. Switch to Online to use Circle Talk (page 20-7).
- Circle Talk is unavailable during voice or video calls. Also, you cannot receive another Circle Talk call during a Circle Talk session.
- Circle Talk is unavailable during international roaming.

## Subscription

To use Circle Talk, you must subscribe to Hot Status (page 20-2).
 Connection fees apply for using Circle Talk.

#### Circle Talk Session Window



- 1) Person with floor control
  - Myself appears when you are talking. \*\* Press and Hold appears when the floor is available.
- 2 1 indicates the person with floor control.
- (3) Session members

If the member is saved to Phone Book, his/her name appears. Members not saved to Phone Book are identified by their phone number.

(4) Check each member's status.

Requesting Requesting participation

Join In Connected

Sharing Participating

Leaving Quit

Not Available Unavailable

# **Making a Circle Talk Call**

1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press and hold  $\widehat{\cdot}$ 

Circle Talk connection is made

- To make a Circle Talk call from the Circle Talk Members List (page 6-4), press । in Standby, select an entry, and then press (a) (CT).
- **2** Press and hold  $\cap$  to talk

Talk when **Myself** appears.

- Initiator can talk as soon as Circle Talk is connected.
- \*\* Myself disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.
- To leave the Circle Talk session, press  $\longrightarrow YES$ 
  - When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

#### Tip

 Press (Menu) from the Circle Talk Members List to perform the following (available functions vary by list):

## Add Members/Edit Group/Delete/Loud Speaker

- To add or delete members to whom you are making a Circle Talk call at the same time, perform the following (put check mark(s) to select up to ten members):

  - Select a member from the Circle Talk Members List → (twice) → • (Menu) → Add → ●
  - Select a group from the Circle Talk Members List → → → → (Menu) → Add/Delete → ●
- Circle Talk Members List can also be displayed from the Main menu by selecting Communications → Circle Talk.
- Alternatively, initiate a Circle Talk call from:
  - Call Log
  - Phone Book
  - Active Window
  - · Hot Status Members List
- You can make a Circle Talk call from the latest record of dialed Circle Talk call log (page 2-6) to rejoin the Circle Talk session which is still active. If the session has ended, a confirmation window appears asking you whether to initiate another Circle Talk call.

# **Answering a Circle Talk Call**

1 Press • (Answer) when you receive a Circle Talk call

Circle Talk connection is made.

- To reject the connection, press 🔀 (Reject).
- When your handset is closed, press to answer.
- **2** Press and hold  $\cdot$

Talk when **Myself** appears.

- Myself disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.
- To leave the Circle Talk session, press  $\Longrightarrow YES$ 
  - When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

#### Tip

- If your answer status for Circle Talk is set to Auto Join (page 20-6), you are automatically connected when you receive a Circle Talk call.
- You can make a Circle Talk call from the latest record of received Circle Talk call log (page 2-7) to rejoin the Circle Talk session which is still active. If the session has ended, a confirmation window appears asking you whether to initiate another Circle Talk call.

# **Circle Talk Operations**

# **Contacting Another Member**

- **1** During a Circle Talk session, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add$  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - ■To Contact a Person from a Circle Talk Members List
    Select Members List → Select a Members List entry → •
  - To Contact a Person from the Hot Status Members List
    Select Hot Status → Select a person → ●
  - To Contact a Person from Phone Book

    Select Phone Book → → Select a person → → Select a phone number → ●
  - To Enter a Phone Number Directly
    Select *Direct Input*→ → Enter a phone number→ ●

# **Adjusting the Earpiece Volume**

1 Use 🐧 during a session

Tip

• This adjusts the speaker volume when output is set for speaker.

# **Switching Sound Output**

1 Press 🗑 ( 🌗 / 🔌 ) during a session

## Tip

 From a Circle Talk Members List, press (Menu) and select Loud Speaker to switch sound output.

# **Circle Talk Members List**

# **Creating a Circle Talk Members List**

Save members to the Circle Talk Members List to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people.

Save up to 50 entries to Circle Talk Members List. Save people from Phone Book, Hot Status Members List or enter their phone number directly.

## Creating an Entry

Main menu ► Communications ► Circle Talk

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add Members $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press (Save) to display the Add Members window.
- - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- **3** Select a member or enter a phone number→●

## Creating a Group

Organize entries by Group to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people. Save up to ten members to a group.

Main menu Communications Circle Talk

- **1** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add Members $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press (a) (Save) to display the Add Members window.
- **2** Select *Group*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Create New*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Select *Empty*→ → *Phone Book|Hot Status|Direct Input*→
  - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- **4** Select a member or enter a phone number→
  - To save more members, repeat Steps 3 and 4.
  - If you want to change a member's phone number, select the member, press twice, and then enter the phone number.
- 5 Press (Save)→Enter a group name→

## Tip

 Press (Menu) in the Create New Group window to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):

Delete/Delete All

## **Adding a Hot Status Members List Group**

Add an entire group from the Hot Status Members List (page 20-4) as a Circle Talk Members List group.

Main menu Communications Circle Talk

- **1** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add Members $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press 🝙 (Save) to display the Add Members window.
- **2** Select *Group*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Hot Status*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Select a group→

## Tip

 Hot Status members in No Group cannot be added using this procedure.

# **Editing a Group Name**

- 1 In Standby, press → Select a Circle Talk Members List group → ☑ (Menu)
- **2** Select *Edit Group*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  *Rename*  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- **3** Edit a group name→

# **Editing Group Member Information**

Add or delete group members, or change a group member's phone number.

- In Standby, press ⊕→Select a Circle Talk Members List group→ (Menu)
- **2** Select *Edit Group*→• *Ohange Member*→•
  - **■**To Add Members

Select *Empty*→ → *Phone Book/Hot Status/Direct Input*→ Select a member or enter a phone number → ●

■To Delete a Member

Select a member you want to delete $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\bigcirc$ 

■To Delete All Members

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  **Delete All** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$  **YES** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■To Change a Member's Phone Number

Select a member whose phone number you want to change→

(twice)→Enter a phone number→

Press (Save)

# Circle Talk

# **Deleting Entries from Circle Talk Members List**

# **1** In Standby, press $\cdot$

**■**To Delete One Entry

Select an entry  $\rightarrow$  w (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■To Select Multiple Entries to Delete

■To Delete All Entries

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Delete* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$ *YES* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

 Circle Talk Members List can also be displayed from the Main menu by selecting Communications → Circle Talk.

# **About the Camera**

The handset is equipped with a 3.24 million effective pixel camera that has digital zoom. Use the camera to take pictures and record videos, as well as to scan QR codes (page 7-11).

## **Precautions**

- The pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- Be aware that camera shake may occur. Hold the handset firmly, or use the delay timer.
- If there is a fingerprint or grease on the lens cover, the subject cannot be focused. Wipe dirt off with a soft cloth.
- Be careful that your finger or the strap does not cover the lens when taking pictures or recording videos.

# Display

# Window when taking pictures/recording videos

There are two windows: Finder and Preview.

- Finder Window
  - From the camera/video launch to taking pictures/recording videos.
- Preview Window

After taking pictures/recording videos.

\* In case of *Mobile* (page 7-5)

## ①Camera Mode/Multi Shots

Digital

Multi Shots (High Speed)

Mobile Mobile

- Multi Shots (Normal Speed)
- Scan Data Sub Camera On
- Multi Shots (Low Speed)

## **②Picture Size**

- ₩ W2048 × H1536 ₩ W144 × H176 1500 W1600 × H1200 ₩ W120 × H160 1280 × H960 W112 x H112
- ₩ W640 × H480
  - # W96 × H128
- ₩ W240 × H320

## **③Ouality**

Fine

Economy

Normal

**4** Exposure

 $2 \cdot ... \cdot 2 \cdot ... = -2.0... \pm 0... +2.0$ 

- **⑤Storage** 
  - Phone Memory
- Memory Card

- **6 Mobile Light** 
  - Mobile Light On
- 7 Macro Mode
  - Macro Mode On
- **® Delay Timer** 
  - **105** 5 sec **10** 10 sec

- 1 20 20 sec
- **9Key Guide Display** THELP Key Guide Display

## **White Balance**

Davlight Cloudy

Fluor (Wht) Tungsten

- Fluor (Day)
- (1)Color Control
  - Intense

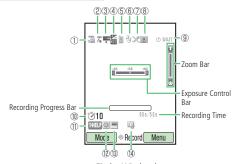
Soft

# **12 Night Mode**

- Night Mode On
- (13) Self-view
  - Self-view On

7

## **Video Camera Indicators**



Finder Window\*

\* In case of Video Mail (page 7-8)

## ①Video

- XX Video On
- Video Mail On
- Short Video On Sub Camera On

#### ②Video Size

- ₩ Video (W320 × H240)
- ¼ Video Mail (W176 × H144)
- Short Video (W128 × H96)

## (3) Quality

Fine

Economy

- Mormal Normal
- **4** Exposure

 $20... 20... \pm 0... +2.0$ 

- **⑤Storage** 
  - Phone Memory
- **6 Mobile Light** 
  - Mobile Light On
- 7 Voice Record
  - > Voice Record Off
- ®Macro Mode
  - Macro Mode On

## (9)Status

- ⊕ WAIT Standby REC Recording
- ▶ PLAY Playing
- III PAUSE Paused

**20** 20 sec

Memory Card

■STOP Stopped

◀◀ REV Rewind

Forward

**II▶SLOW** Slow Playback

- **(10) Delay Timer 305** 5 sec
  - **10** 10 sec
- **(1)**Key Guide Display
  - THELP Key Guide Display
- **12White Balance** 
  - ☼ Daylight
  - Cloudy
  - Fluor (Day)
- (13) Color Control Intense
- (14) Self-view
- Self-view On

- Soft

Fluor (Wht)

Tungsten

Use ( to adjust the zoom.

For details on the zoom in each mode, see pages 7-5 and 7-9.



## Note

- Zoom is unavailable while the delay timer (page 7-15) is set.
- The larger the zoom, the grainier the quality.

# 7

Camera

# **Exposure Control**

Use •• to adjust the brightness.



#### Tip

 Depending on the environment, e.g. under fluorescent light, a striped pattern may appear on the image, which can be reduced by adjusting the brightness.

## **Mobile Light**

Press  $\boxed{x \equiv}$  to turn on/off the mobile light. When the mobile light is turned on, " $\frac{4}{3}$ " appears on the finder window.

## **Using Macro Mode**

If the lens is close to the subject, switch the close-up switch (page 1-6) above the main camera as follows. When the macro mode is set to on, "" appears on the finder window.



# **Using Key Guide Display**

Press  $\boxed{12}$  to display key operations on the finder window. To exit the key quide display, press  $\boxed{12}$  again.

## **Using Self-view**

Set the self-view mode, and you can take a picture of yourself as if you were looking into a mirror. Press  $\mathbb{H}^{\underline{*}}$  to turn on/off the self-view mode. When the self-view mode is set to on, " $\mathbb{H}^{\underline{*}}$  appears on the finder window.

#### Tip

When the camera for self-view is turned on, the picture size (right, page 7-9) changes to W240 × H320 for taking a picture, to W176 × H144 for recording a video, and the video mode (page 7-9) changes to Video Mail.

# **Pictures**

Settings for Frame, Delay Timer, Shutter Sound, effects, etc. can be made. The pictures are saved to Data Folder (Chapter 10) on the handset or memory card (Chapter 9) in JPEG format (popular format for saving images to a PC). Also edit the pictures using Edit Picture (page 7-19) or take pictures of faces (page 7-6) to use them in Phone Book.

## **Picture Modes**

There are two modes for taking pictures: *Mobile* and *Digital*.

## **■**Mobile

Take a picture to set as wallpaper, etc.

# **■**Digital

Take a high-quality picture to display on an external device such as PC.

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom
Mobile	W240 × H320	Approx. 6.4 ×
	W144 × H176	Approx. 10.7 ×
	W120 × H160	Approx. 12.8 ×
	W112 × H112	Approx. 12.8 ×
	W96 × H128	Approx. 16 ×
	W2048 × H1536	_
Digital	W1600 × H1200	Approx. 1.3 ×
Digital	W1280 × H960	Approx. 1.6 ×
	W640 × H480	Approx. 3.2 ×

# Taking a Picture

Main Camera

- **1** Select *MobilelDigital*→
- **2** Frame the subject on the main display → / o The shutter clicks, and the preview window appears.
- 3 Press •

If Storage (page 7-15) is set to **Phone Memory**, the picture is saved to **Pictures** in Data Folder (page 10-1), and the finder window reappears. If it is set to **Memory Card**, a picture taken in **Mobile** is saved to **Pictures**, one taken in **Digital** to **Digital Camera**, and the finder window reappears.

#### Note

When there is not enough light, e.g. in a dark place, the picture quality
may deteriorate and white dots may appear. It is recommended to take
pictures in bright places or to use the Mobile Light.

#### Tip

- Pressing a in Standby also displays the finder window.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the finder window is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the finder window, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
   Picture Size/My Pictures/Self-view/Night Mode/Multi Shots/Add Frame/Icons Display/Save Settings/Picture/Function
- After capturing image, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
   Via Infrared/ScreenDisplay/Zoom/To Phone Book/Edit Picture/ Storage
- The storage place can be changed (page 7-15). You can also change the folder for pictures taken in *Mobile* (page 7-5) or pictures taken in *Digital* (page 7-5) whose storage place is set to the handset.

# **Setting Pictures for Phone Book**

Pictures you have taken can be set as pictures (page 4-2) in Phone Book. To set a picture taken with the camera as a picture in Phone Book, set the picture mode (page 7-5) to Mobile and Picture Size (page 7-5) to  $\textit{W112} \times H112$  beforehand.

- **1** On the preview window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow To$ Phone Book  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Picture
    Select Add New → → Create a Phone Book entry
  - ■Adding a Picture to Phone Book Entry

    Select Add → → Select a Phone Book entry → → Edit Phone Book entry
    - If the selected Phone Book entry contains a picture, select **YES** and press (☐) (OK) to change the picture.
    - For details on registering a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

# **Functions for Taking Pictures**

## **Setting Camera Modes**

When the camera mode is set, "[Mobile] or "[Mobile] appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press (Mode)
  - Taking a Picture to Set as Wallpaper, etc.
    Select Mobile → •
  - Taking a High-quality Picture
    Select *Digital* → •

## Tip

 For details on changing the picture size in *Digital* and *Mobile*, see page 7-13.

# Night Mode

When the night mode is set to on, " " appears on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Night$   $Mode \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

## Note

• Night mode is unavailable during Multi Shots (right).

## Tip

• Night mode is set to *OFF* when you stop using the camera.

## **Multi Shots**

Take nine pictures in succession. When Multi Shots is set to on, """ (High Speed), """ (Normal Speed) or """ (Low Speed) appears on the finder window

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Multi*  $Shots \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select the speed→●

#### Note

- Multi shots is unavailable in *Digital* (page 7-5).
- Night mode (left) is unavailable during Multi Shots.

## Tip

- Nine pictures are taken in about two seconds (High Speed), three seconds (Normal Speed) or four seconds (Low Speed).
- Multi Shots is set to OFF when you stop using the camera or change the mode.

Select a frame before you take a picture. There are ten types of frames (W240  $\times$  H320) preset in the handset. Also select a frame from Data Folder.

**1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add$  Frame $\rightarrow$ 

■Setting a Frame Preset in the Handset
Select *Preset* → Select a frame → ●

■ Setting a Downloaded Frame
Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → • → *Pictures* → • → Select a frame → • • • • →

Releasing a Frame Select  $OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

- A frame cannot be set in *Digital* (page 7-5).
- A preset frame cannot be set when the Picture Size (page 7-5) is not set to W240 × H320.

#### Tip

- On the frame preview window, you can press X = , (H≥), (→) or (→) to change frames.
- The frame setting is set to OFF when you stop using the camera or change the mode.

# **Videos**

Recorded videos are saved to the handset (Data Folder) or memory card in MPEG-4 format (popular format for saving data to a mobile phone).

- MPEG-4 formatted files (.3G2) recorded in *Video* or stored in Data Folder cannot be attached to a message or sent via infrared communication. The files cannot be set as a ringtone pattern or alarm tone.
- MPEG4 or H.263 can be selected as a file format in Video Mail.
   MPEG4 is a format broadly used on SoftBank mobile phones. H.263 is usually used on foreign mobile phones. If a video cannot be played on the recipient's phone, change the file format and try recording again.

## Video Mo<u>des</u>

There are three modes for recording videos: Video, Video Mail and Short Video.

## Video

Record a video for a long time (up to 20 minutes).

## **■Video Mail**

Record a video to attach to a message.

## **■Short Video**

Record a video to attach to a message and send to an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank mobile phone (PDC).

7

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom
Video	W320 × H240	Approx. 3.2 ×
Video Mail	W176 × H144	Approx. 3.2 ×
Short Video	W128 × H96	Approx. 5.3 ×

# **Recording a Video**

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the *Videos* folder in the *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*.

Main Camera

**Select** Video|Video Mail|Short Video→●

**2** Frame the subject on the Main Display→ ●/

The start sound is heard and recording begins.

- If the Video mode (page 7-8) is set to *Video*, press at to pause recording, and at to resume recording.
- 3 Press •/a

The end sound is heard and the video is automatically saved. The first frame of the video appears on the preview window.

#### Tip

- Press and hold in Standby also displays the finder window.
- The recording time displayed during recording is only intended as an approximate quide.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the finder window is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu) to perform the following: *My Videos/Self-view/ScreenDisplay/Icons Display/Voice Record/Save Settings/Movie/Function*
- After recording a video, press (Menu) on the preview window to perform the following:

Via Infrared/Delete/ScreenDisplay/Icons Display/To Phone Book

- Forward/Rewind and Slow playback can be performed on the preview window.
  - Forward/Rewind: Press and hold ••• during playback Slow playback: Press Press and hold ••
- While the recording is paused, the recording can be ended (video saved) or stopped.
- Recording end (save): Press
   Recording stop: Press
   ✓ (Cancel)
- The storage place and folder can be changed (page 7-15).

# **Deleting a Video**

Delete a video displayed on the preview window.

1 On the preview window, press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern

A video recorded in *Video Mail* or *Short Video* can be set as a ringtone pattern (page 4-3) for voice calls.

**1** On the preview window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *To Phone Book* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- ■Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern Select Add New → Create a contact
- ■Adding a Ringtone Pattern to Phone Book Entry

  Select Add → → Select a Phone Book entry → Edit Phone

  Book entry
  - If the selected Phone Book entry contains a ringtone pattern, select **YES** and press (a) (OK) to change the ringtone pattern.
  - For details on registering a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

# **Functions for Recording Videos**

# **Setting Record Modes**

When the record mode is set, " 500 "(Video), " 500 "(Video Mail) or " 500 "(Short Video) appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press 🗐 (Mode)
  - Recording a Video for a Long Time (up to 20 minutes)
    Select Video → ●
  - Recording a Video to Attach to a Message Select *Video Mail* → •
  - ■Recording a Video for an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank Handset

Select **Short Video**→

# Recording a Video without Sound

Record a video without sound. When Voice Record is set to  ${\it OFF}$ , " $\gg$ " appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Voice

  Record → •
- **2** Select  $OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

Tip

• Voice Record is set to **ON** when playing/recording is ended.

# **Setting the Video Compression Method**

Set the compression method for videos recorded in Video Mail.

1 On the finder window, press  $\[ \]$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Encode \rightarrow \[ \]$ 

**2** Select *MPEG4|H*. 263→ •

## Tip

 The encoding setting is set to MPEG4 when playback is ended or the mode is changed.

# **QR Code**

The Main Camera allows you to scan QR codes and save up to ten scanned data items. However, this number depends on the amount of available memory space. Connect to a URL included in the scanned information, create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information or save it to Phone Book.



#### Note

- The camera may not be able to scan a QR code that is dirty or in the dark
- Some QR codes cannot be scanned depending on the size or version.

#### Tip

 When a QR code has been divided into data areas, you can scan up to 16 data areas consecutively, and they will be saved as a single QR code data.

# Scanning a QR Code

Set the Close-up Switch to macro mode before scanning a QR code (page 7-4).

Main menu Camera Scan Data

- **1** Select *Scan*→●
- **2** Frame a QR code in the Main Display→●
  - Use ••• to adjust the exposure.
  - When the QR code has been divided into data areas, select YES to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is displayed.
- **3** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Save \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### Tip

- The following step can also activate the barcode reader:
   Main menu→Tools→Useful Tools→Scan Data
- If (a) (Mode) is pressed on the scan QR code window, the camera mode can be changed.

Data	Operation
Begins with MAILTO:	Create a message (pages 17-4, 17-9)
Begins with MEMORY:	Save to Phone Book (page 4-2)
Contains URL	Access the URL and display the web page
Contains Media Player URL	Access the URL and display the web page
Contains an email address	Create a message, save to Phone Book
Begins with TEL:	Make a call, create a message, save to Phone Book

7

Camera

# **Checking Scanned Data**

Main Camera Scan Data

**1** Select *Scanned Data*→

**2** Select a QR code data→●

Tip

• While a QR code data is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Rename/Delete/Delete All

# Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code

- 1 Scan a QR code→ w (Menu)
  - ■Launching Navi Appli
    Select Go To→ → Launch Navi Appli
  - ■Saving a Scanned Data to the Location Memo List Select *To Locations* → ●

# **Picture & Video Settings**

# **Settings for Taking Pictures**

## **Setting the Picture Quality**

Set the picture quality at which to save a picture (in JPEG format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "" (Fine), "" (Normal) or "" (Economy) appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Picture*→ ●
- **2** Select  $Quality \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$  Select the quality  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$

# **Setting the Picture Size**

The picture size appears as an indicator (page 7-2) on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\[ \]$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Picture*  $Size \rightarrow \[ \bullet \]$
- **2** Select a picture size→●
  - For details on picture sizes, see page 7-5.

## **Date Stamp**

Add a date stamp to pictures.

1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Picture* 

- **2** Select *Date Stamp*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $ON \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Select a date color→

## Note

 When the camera mode (page 7-5) is set to *Digital* or Picture Size (page 7-5) set to *W112* × *H112*, a date stamp cannot be added.

# Displaying a Grid

Display horizontal and vertical gridlines on the finder window to use as a vertical and horizontal guide for taking pictures.

- **2** Select  $Grid \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

## **Shutter Sound**

Select either of the two types.

- On the finder window, press  $\mathbf{w}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Function$
- **2** Select Shutter Sound→ → Pattern 1|Pattern 2 → ●

## Tip

- The shutter sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 12-1) is set.
- To check the shutter sound, press (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

## **Setting Automatic Save**

If Auto Save is set to *ON*, after capturing an image, the preview window does not appear and the image is automatically saved to the storage place specified in *Storage* (page 7-15).

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Save Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Auto Save $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- 2 Select *ON/OFF*→

# **Settings for Recording Videos**

## **Setting the Video Quality**

Set the video quality at which to save a video (in MPEG or H.263 format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "\*\*\* (Fine), "\*\*\*\*\* (Normal) or "\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\*\* (Economy) appears on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press [v] (Menu) $\rightarrow Movie \rightarrow Ouality \rightarrow [v]$
- **2** Select the quality→●

## Tip

- Regardless of the quality setting, if the mode (page 7-8) is set to Short Video, a video is recorded in Economy.
- The maximum recording time varies depending on the video quality setting.

## **Start & End Sounds**

Select either of the two types.

- **2** Select Start/End→ → Pattern 1/Pattern 2→ •

## Tip

- The start/end sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 12-1) is set.
- To check the start/end sound, press (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

## **Setting Full Screen for Videos**

Set the video (excluding Video) size to the display width.

On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→

ScreenDisplay→ •

## **Preview Setting**

Set whether to display the preview window after you record a video.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Function  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Preview $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

# **Settings for Pictures & Videos**

## **Changing Storage Place**

The storage places for pictures and videos can be changed. When the storage place is set, " | " (Phone Memory) or " " (Memory Card) appears on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Save Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Storage $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Tip

 If the storage place is set to Memory Card and a picture is taken in Digital (page 7-5), the picture is saved to Digital Camera.

## **Delay Timer**

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after  $\boxed{\phantom{0}}/\boxed{6}$  is pressed and a specified time elapses. When the delay timer is set, " $\boxed{\phantom{0}}20$ " (20 sec), " $\boxed{\phantom{0}}10$ " (10 sec) or " $\boxed{\phantom{0}}05$ " (5 sec) appears on the finder window.

- 1 On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→Picturel

  Movie→ ●
- **2** Select *Delay Timer*→
- **3** Select seconds→

#### Note

• Zoom (page 7-4) is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

## Tip

- Press or to take a picture or start recording when the delay timer is activated.
- Press 
   \( \subseteq \) (Cancel) or \( \subseteq \subseteq \) to stop capturing or recording when the delay timer is activated.
- The delay timer is set to *OFF* when capturing or recording is finished.

- 1 On the finder window, press w (Menu)→Picturel

  Movie→

  •
- **2** Select White Balance→
- **3** Select an item→

Tip

 The white balance is set to Auto when you stop using the camera/ video.

# **Color Control**

When the color tone is set, "  $\blacksquare$  " (Intense) or "  $\blacksquare$ " (Soft) appears on the finder window.

- **1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Picturel Movie*→
- **2** Select *Color Control*→
- **3** Select a color tone→

Tip

 $\bullet\,$  The color tone is set to  $\it Neutral$  when you stop using the camera/video.

## **Picture & Video Effects**

Take sepia tone and monochrome pictures.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Picturel Movie $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Effects $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select effects→●

Tip

 The effects setting is set to OFF when you stop using the camera/ video.

## **Display Indicators**

Set display indicators on or off.

**1** On the finder window, press ☑ (Menu)→*Icons* Display → ●

# **Adjusting Flicker**

E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (50Hz/60Hz/Automatic) to reduce flicker.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Function  $\rightarrow$
- **2** Select Flicker→ →50 Hz/60 Hz/Automatic → •

Camera

## Setting the File Name

Select the file name, taken by the mode other than Digital, to be the date and time or "name of your choice + nnnn". nnnn is a number from 0001 to 9999. In Digital, the name of a file saved to the handset will be the date and time, and the name of a file saved to the memory card will be "DCF\_nnnn".

On the finder window, press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Save$ 

Settings  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow File\ Name \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■Setting the Name to the Date and Time

Select **Date&Time**→

■Setting a Name to Your Choice

Select  $Define \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a file name  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## **Setting Keypad Shortcuts**

Set whether to use the keypad shortcuts for accessing functions while you are using the camera.

On the finder window, press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Function  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Key Shortcut \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Tip

• The following keypad shortcuts are available while you are taking pictures and recording videos.

Button	Taking Pictures	Recording Videos
1 .5 *	Key Guide	
2 tr	Camera Mode	
3 &	Record Mode	
4 &	Barcode	
5.*	Quality	
6 .ta	White Balance	
7.3	Delay Timer	
8 **	Night Mode Screen Display	
9.5	Picture Size	Voice Record
ds	Icons Display	
X **	Mobile Light	
# A/a *	Self-view	
From if the Very Charter tie set to OFF the above can be used		

Even if the Key Shortcut is set to *OFF*, the above can be used.

# **Preview Setting**

To check a picture or video stored in Data Folder or memory card, select it from the finder window or Data Folder.

# **Previewing a Picture**

Preview a picture stored in Data Folder when the camera is activated.

- 1 On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow My$ Pictures  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Select a picture → ●
  To use the full screen, press (Full).

## Tip

 When a picture is displayed, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear):
 Set as (page 10-3)/Delete/Edit/Location/Send/Details

# **Previewing a Video**

Preview a video stored in Data Folder when the video is activated.

- **1** On the finder window, press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow My$  *Videos*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Select a video→

  To display the key guide, press 

  \*\*In a significant content of the significant co

## Tip

- When a video is played, press (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear):
   Set as (page 10-5)/Delete/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Hide Icons\*/Show Icons\*/Search Time (page 8-8)/Send/Web Link/Display Link/Details
  - \* Can only be selected in full screen mode.

# **Send Functions**

If Auto Save (page 7-14) is set to *OFF* or Preview (page 7-15) set to *ON*, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.

#### Note

• Videos recorded in *Video* cannot be sent.

## **Sending via Mail**

1 On the preview window, press (Mail)

For details on creating S! Mail messages, see page 17-4.

## Tip

 If the file size of a picture to be attached to a message exceeds the limit, a confirmation window appears. If *Compress & Attach* is selected, the size is compressed to 93 Kbytes or less and the picture is attached to a message.

# **Sending via Infrared Communication**

- 1 On the preview window, press w (Menu)→

  Via Infrared →
  - For details on infrared communication, see page 11-2.

# **Editing a Picture**

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited.

Any picture saved in JPEG or PNG format that has a file size up to 1.6 Mbytes can be edited. Images that are larger than W240  $\times$  H320 (W320×H240) are reduced to W240  $\times$  H320. A picture that is smaller than W16  $\times$  H16 cannot be edited.

- If Overwrite is performed, the file cannot be restored to the original. To leave the original file, select Save as New.
- If the Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from the Data Folder before editing a picture.

# Changing the Picture Size

Change the picture size to  $W240 \times H320$ ,  $W144 \times H176$ ,  $W120 \times H160$ ,  $W112 \times H112$ ,  $W96 \times H128$  or *Define*.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- Select Edit→ → Phone Memory Memory Card→

  → Select a picture → ●
- Press № (Menu)→Picture Size→ ●→Select a picture size→
  - After selecting the size, you can use to adjust the position of the picture to clip.
  - ■Adjusting to the Width or Height

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Resize) $\rightarrow$  *Fit to Width/Fit to Length* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■Rotating the Picture

Press (Resize)→Rotate Image→ •

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Cut)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Overwrite | Save as  $New \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

- If *Define* is selected for the size, enter a size (W16 $\sim$ 240  $\times$  H16 $\sim$ 320).
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

## **Picture Effects**

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Effects* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select effects $\rightarrow$

Selecting a Color Tone
Select *Change Color*  $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\bullet$   $\bullet$ 

**3** Press  $\bullet \rightarrow \Box$  (OK) $\rightarrow O$ verwritelSave as New $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

Tip

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# Adding a Frame

There are ten types of frames (W240  $\times$  H320) preset in the handset. Also select a frame from Data Folder.

Main 

Tools 

Useful Tools 

Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→ Select a picture → •
- **2** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add Frame $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - Setting a Frame Preset in the Handset
    Select Preset Frames→ → Select a frame→ ●
  - ■Setting a Downloaded Frame
    Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select a frame → ●
- **3** Press  $\bullet \rightarrow \bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow Overwrite | Save as New <math>\rightarrow \bullet$

Tip

- After selecting a frame, you can press X is or #400 to change frames.
- If the size of a frame is smaller than that of the picture, you can use on a diust the position of the frame.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# Adding a Stamp

There are 15 types of stamps preset in the handset. Also select a stamp from Data Folder.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Useful Tools ▶ Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→ → Select a picture → •
- **2** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Add Stamp $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Setting a Stamp Preset in the Handset

Select  $Preset\ Stamps \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$  (twice)

■Setting a Downloaded Stamp

Select **Phone Memory/Memory Card**→ Select a stamp→ (twice)

**Press** ⓐ (OK)→ⓒ (OK)→OverwritelSave as New→

#### Note

 If the size of a stamp is larger than that of the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

## Tip

- After selecting a stamp, you can press \*\* or \*\* to change stamps.
- You can use to adjust the position of the stamp.
- To cancel an added stamp, press 🔀 (Menu) and select *Undo All*.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# **Adding Text**

Add text by selecting from five font sizes, nine font colors and frame colors.

Main ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Edit*→ *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→ → Select a picture → •
- **2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Add Text \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select a font size→ → Enter a text→
  - Changing a Font Color Press (Color) → ()/() → (●)
  - Press (Color)→•○/○•→•
- Press  $\bullet$  →  $\Box$  (OK)→OverwritelSave as New→  $\bullet$

## Tip

- You can use to adjust the position of the text.
- The maximum number of characters that can be entered are nine for Large and Medium, 12 for Medium-Small (Standard), 13 for Small and 20 for Extra-Small.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# **Rotating a Picture**

- **1** Select *Edit*→ *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→ Select a picture → •
- 2 Press \( \omega \) (Menu) → Rotate Image → \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \omega \) ( \( \ome
- **3** Press (OK)  $\rightarrow$  Overwrite | Save as New  $\rightarrow$  •

Tip

 If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# **Compounding Pictures**

Compound two pictures.

- **1** Select *Edit*→ *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→ Select a picture •
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Overlay $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Phone Memoryl Memory Card $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a picture $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - ■Adjusting the Transparent Rate
    Press (○)/(○•)

**3** Press ●→@ (OK)→OverwritelSave as New→●

Tip

- The size of a picture must be the same as that of a picture being edited.
- If Save as New is selected, enter a file name, press and select the storage place.

# Mixing Pictures to Create Wallpaper

Mix four pictures to create wallpaper.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Edit Picture

- **1** Select *Wallpaper*→ •
- 2 Select [1]→ → Phone Memory|Memory Card→
   → Select a picture → ●
- **3** Select pictures for [2] to [4]

Repeat Step 2.

- To unset a picture, press (Delete).
- **4** Press  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ Phone MemorylMemory Card $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Tip

 If the size of a picture is not W120 × H160, press (Resize) to change the size.

# **About Media Player**

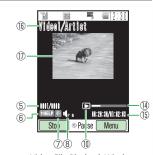
Media Player enables playback and streaming of audio/video files stored in the handset or the memory card. Messages can be created while listening to a music file.

- Media Player supports 3GPP, 3GPP2 and MP4 file format. However, some files cannot be played depending on the file type. For details, refer to the Reatlam 2007 for 810T/811T/813T Guide Rook
- You cannot automatically receive S! Mail (page 17-22) while streaming.
- You can connect your handset to your PC with the USB cable (optional) and transfer music files to your handset. For details on transferring music files, see page 11-5.
- Background playback may be paused or stopped depending on the type of function used during background playback (page 8-9). For example, if you launch S! Appli, background playback is paused. If you close your handset, S! Appli is paused. Playback will be automatically resumed after Music Player is launched.

# Playback Window



Music File Playback Window



Video File Playback Window

(2)Artist name/Album name

4) Playback image

(6) Help guidance

®Playback volume

Repeat All

Paused

- ①Title
- ③Playlist name
- (5) File number/total number of files
- 7)Web Link
- (9)Play mode
- Random (10) Playback status
- Repeat
- Current Only
- Playing Rewinding **■** Buffering
- (11)Voice Cancel
- Forwarding
- Slow playback ■ Stop
- (12)Surround (14)Progress bar
- (15) Elapsed playback time/Total playback time
- (16) File name/Artist name
- (17) Video Display

(13) Equalizer

# **Playing Music & Videos**

Main menu

Media Player

**1** Select Audio/Videos→●

■Disc Search

Files in *Ring Song • Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist or album.

■All Music

All files in *Ring Song • Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed at once.

Artist/Album/Folder

Files in *Ring Song • Tone* and *Music* folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist, album or folder.

**■**Videos

Select **Phone Memory**/**Memory Card** → **•**Files in **Videos** folder of Data Folder are displayed.

**2** Select a file→

● To end Media Player, press 🚎.

#### Tip

- Pressing 🔝 in Standby also displays the Audio menu.
- If you close your handset while playing a music file with Media Player, Music Player will be displayed on the external display.
- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a
  confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
  select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode.
  However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphones are
  connected
- If you press and hold in Standby, you can resume playing a music file that you played last.
- When a file is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

To Playlist/Sort by/Buy Key/Details

• While playing/paused, press 🔀 (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

# Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select  $Audio \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Player Image \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select *NormallKu-man*→

# **Operations during Playback**

Functions	Operation while stopped/paused	Operation during playing
Return to the beginning of a file/ Skip to previous	Press <del>X ii</del> ]/•○	Press 🗓 / •O
Skip to next	Press # A/3 / O•	Press # A/s / O•
Forward	Press and hold • *1*2	Press and hold •
Rewind	Press and hold ••• *1*2	Press and hold •O
Rewind video frame by frame (only video files)	Press •O *2	_
Forward video frame by frame (only video files)	Press • *2	_
Slow Playback (only video files)	Press and hold • *2	_
Adjust volume	Use 💸	Use 🐧
View operation guide	Press 1 **	Press 1 %

<sup>\*1</sup> Only music files can be operated.

<sup>\*2</sup> Operation is possible only when playback is paused.

## Tip

• The following shortcuts can be assigned during music or video playback.

Key	During music file playback	During video file playback
10 to	Background Play	_
(Press and hold)	My Library	_
X is	Previous File	
# A/a	Next File	
1 .5	Key Guide	
2 ½	Play Mode	_
3 ଛ	Surround	Mute/Unmute
4 &	Equalizer	Screen Display
5.5	Voice Cancel	_
d;	_	Icons Display
9	_	Mute/Unmute

# **Using Playlists**

Using playlists, you will be able to create a list of your favorite songs and play them as a set. Add music files to playlists by all tracks at once by artist or by album. Besides playlists that you created in advance, there is also My Library playlist where the current music file being played can be added (page 8-7).

## **Creating a Playlist**

Create up to ten playlists in your handset. Also create up to ten playlists in a memory card. Each playlist can contain up to 50 tracks.

- **1** In Standby, press  $\longrightarrow$  *Playlist*  $\rightarrow$  •
- **2** Press ☑ (Menu)→New Playlist→ →Phone Memory!Memory Card → Enter a playlist name → •
- **3** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$
- 4 Select All Music→
  - Selecting by Artist/by Album
    Select Artist/Album→ (●) → Select an artist/album→ (●)
- **5** Select a music file→
  - To add another file, repeat Step 5.
- 6 Press 🗐 (Create)

# **Playing a Playlist**

- **1** In Standby, press  $\longrightarrow$  *Playlist*  $\rightarrow$  •
- 2 Select a playlist→@ (Play)

#### Tip

- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a
  confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily,
  select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode.
  However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphone is
  connected
- When a playlist is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Delete/Copy/Rename/New Playlist/Change Order

# **Editing a Playlist**

- **1** In Standby, press  $\longrightarrow$  *Playlist*  $\rightarrow$  •
- 2 Select a playlist
  - **■**Editing a Playlist Name

Press  $\$ \( \begin{align\*} \text{Menu} \rightarrow \mathbb{Rename} \rightarrow \end{align\*} \rightarrow \mathbb{E}\dit a playlist name \rightarrow \infty

Deleting

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ **Delete** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ **YES** $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Copying

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Copy $\rightarrow$ Phone Memory/Memory Card  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Adding Tracks to Playlist

Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Add Tracks*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *All Music*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Add)

- To select music files by artist or album, select Artist/Album and select an artist/album.
- Deleting Tracks of a Playlist

- To delete multiple tracks, select Select Multi, select files you want to delete, and press <a>[a]</a> (Delete).</a>
- If you delete all tracks on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.
- ■Changing the Playing Order of a Playlist

Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a track $\rightarrow$   $\circ$  (Change) $\rightarrow$  Use  $\diamondsuit$  to select the position to which to move the track $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

#### aiT

 If you delete a file from a playlist, the original music file will not be deleted.

# **Accessing Recently Played Files**

Display the 20 most recent music and video files played.

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select  $Audio \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Playlist \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Recent \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Accessing the Recently Played Video Files
Select Videos → → Recent → → Select a file → ●

## Tip

- Only playable files are saved to the list of recently played files.
- If you play the same file more than once, the most recent record is saved to the list.
- When a file is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

To Playlist/Delete/Change View/Details

 While playing, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):

Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

# **Downloading Music and Video Files**

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select Audio/Videos→●

2 Select Download Music|Download Videos → → YES → ● Follow the onscreen instructions.

# **Streaming**

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

- Packet transmission fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.
- When manner mode is set to Silent or Alarms (page 12-1), a confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily, select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode. However, a confirmation window is not displayed when the earphone is connected.

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select Streaming  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Streaming from Bookmark URL

Access the bookmarked Web Pages for streaming.

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select  $Streaming \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select a Bookmark→●

## Streaming from URLs Streamed

Main menu Media Player

**1** Select Streaming  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Recent  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select a title→●

## Streaming from Links in Messages and Web Pages

Play stream content by selecting a link.

■Streaming from S! Mail/SMS
Display a link→ • → Connect → •

• Operations may vary depending on the website.

# **Other Operations & Settings**

# Registering Music Files in My Library Playlist

Add up to 50 tracks to My Library playlist by simply pressing 🖫 while a music file is being played.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press and hold 🖫

## Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist

Add a music file being played or paused to a playlist.

While a music file is playing/paused, press 
(Menu)

→ To Playlist→
(●)

**2** Select a Playlist→●

# **Switching Play Modes**

Set the Play mode to Random or Repeat.

**1** While a music file is playing/paused, press w (Menu)
→ Play Mode → •

**2** Select a Play mode→●

8

## **Using Search Time**

Specify a position (time) from which you want to play a file.

- 1 While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu)

  → Search Time → •
- 2 Enter a position (time) from which you want to play a file→ ●

A file is played from the position you entered.

## **Setting the Surround**

Expand the spatial imaging of playback.

- **1** While a music file is playing/paused, press w (Menu)
  → Surround → •
- **2** Select a surround type→●

## Setting the Equalizer

Boost certain frequencies of playback.

- **1** While a music file is playing/paused, press ☑ (Menu) → Equalizer → •
- 2 Select an equalizer type or genre→

## **Setting the Voice Cancel**

Reduce the vocal level of playback and emphasize the instruments.

- While a music file is playing/paused, press 

  (Menu)

  → Voice Cancel → •
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

Tic

- If Voice Cancel is set to ON while a monaural music file is being played, playback will no longer be heard.
- Voice Cancel cannot be set at the same time as Surround or Equalizer.

## **Sending Files**

Send music or video files to other mobile phones or infrared compatible devices

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select  $Ring\ Song \cdot Tone|Music|Videos \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \mathsf{Select}$  a music/video file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Send \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Select the transmission method→
  - See page 11-2 for infrared communication.

## **Viewing Property**

Detailed information about a music or video file is displayed.

**1** Select a file  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Details*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

The file name and size, playback time, etc. are displayed in the property.
 Displayed items vary depending on the file type.

## Switching to Background Playback

Switch to background playback in order to use other functions.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press ☐ (BGPlay)

Tip

 You can switch to background playback by pressing while a music file is being played, too. If you press again in Standby during background playback, Media Player will be displayed.

# **Music Player**

Use Music Player to navigate Media Player for playing music files with your handset closed.

# **Playback Window**



- 1)Play mode
- ②Playback status
- ③Title, artist name, album name, track number or playback time

## **Activating Music Player**

# Close your handset while a music file is being played on Media Player

#### Note

• When the battery is low, Music Player won't launch.

#### Tip

- With the 811T, press and hold \$\infty\$, to activate Music Player with the handset closed
- If you press and hold Q<sub>n</sub> to activate Music Player while manner mode (page 12-1) is set, a confirmation window is displayed. To disable manner mode temporarily, select YES. Select NO if you do not want to disable manner mode. However, a confirmation window is not displayed when earphone is connected.
- If you open your handset while music is being played on Music Player, it will be switched to background playback.

## **Operations during Playback**

Perform the following operations by using the Music Player keys or side keys while a music file is being played/paused.

• For the 810T/813T, only side key operations are available.

Key	Functions		
Press 1/	Adjust volume		
Press and hold 1/9	Switch playback screen*		
Press and hold 💍	Switch play mode  Return to the beginning of a track/Skip to previous (not possible when there is no previous track)		
Press <b>™O</b>			
Press and hold <b>™</b> •	Rewind		
Press O-	Skip to next (not possible when there is no next track)		
Press and hold O-	Forward		
Press 💆	Pause/Play		
Press and hold 🙎	End Music Player		

<sup>\*</sup> Displayed in the order of artist name, album name, track number, playback time and song title.

## Using the Music Player Menu 811T

Open the Music Player Menu to play music files from a specified category.

#### **About the Music Player Menu**



## (Play an Artist)

The music files of the selected artist are played.

## (Play an Album)

The music files of the selected album are played.

#### **→** (Play from All Songs)

Files that you select from all the stored music files are played.

#### (Play a Playlist)

The music files on the selected playlist are played.

## (Play a Folder)

The music files in the selected folder are played.

## Playing Music Files in a Selected Category

- 1 Press 🗑 while the handset is closed
- **2** Press ⊶O/O⊷ to select a category→ 🥍
- **3** Press **™O/O™** to select an item to play → **9**<sub>11</sub>

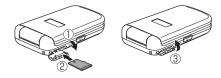
# **About Memory Card**

The pictures you take, videos you record and various downloaded files can be saved to a memory card.

- This manual refers to a microSD<sup>TM</sup> memory card as a "memory card".
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of January, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.

## Inserting a Memory Card

Insert a memory card after turning off the handset. Otherwise, files on the memory card may be lost.



- 1 Open the memory card slot cover (1)
- **2** Gently push a memory card into the slot until it clicks into position, making sure the gold terminal is facing down (②)
- **3** Close the memory card slot cover (3)

#### Note

 Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.

## **Removing a Memory Card**

When you remove the memory card from the handset, follow the reverse procedure of inserting it.

#### Vote

- Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.
- If your hand is released after pushing in the memory card lightly with your finger, the memory card comes out a little from the handset when removing.
- The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

# **Using a Memory Card**

Check and edit pictures and other data saved to a memory card. Also save a backup of Data Folder, Phone Book and other data in your handset to a memory card (pages 4-9, 10-11).

- If the battery level is low, your handset may not read or write files.
- Never remove the memory card or battery pack while files are being accessed or formatting. Damage to memory card may result and files/data may be lost.
- Processing may take a while for some types of files.
- Files on the memory card may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Some files saved from a PC or other device may not be displayed/played on your handset.
- Among files on the memory card, the files with a name using more than 32 characters are not displayed.
- If the same name is used for more than one file or folder on the memory card using double-byte characters regardless of upper case or lower case, the name may not be displayed correctly on your PC or other device.
- Do not put labels or stickers on the memory card.

# **Memory Card Configuration**

The folder tree on the memory card is shown below.

Folder Name	Description			
CIM DCIM	Stores pictures taken in Digital mode (page 7-5).			
PRIVATE				
TOSHIBA				
DIC	Stores Dictionary files copied from the supplied CD-ROM.			
MYFOLDER				
Mail	The configuration is identical to Message Box (page 17-11) on your handset.			
My Items	Stores folders (Pictures, My Pictograms, Videos, Ring Song · Tone, Music, Templates, Flash(R), Flash(R) Tones, Books, S! Appli, Other Documents) of memory card Data Folder (page 10-1). Bookmark backup files are also stored.			
TS_Folder	Stores setting data of which backups are made with Relocate function (page 14-39), files for Gamendeco, and files which can be viewed only from the Media Player.			
Utility				
Calendar	Stores appointment backup files.			
Contacts	Stores Phone Book data and backup files.			
Memo	Stores Notepad backup files.			
Rights	Stores Content Key backup files.			
Tasks	Stores Tasks backup files.			

• Some files cannot be played depending on the file type.

## **Formatting a Memory Card**

Formatting a memory card deletes all data in the memory card.

 If a memory card is formatted by another device, it may not work properly with your handset. Be sure to use your handset to format a memory card.



**1** Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

 If the Dictionary data is damaged, it may be erased when the memory card is formatted. In this case, reinstall the Dictionary data from the supplied CD-ROM. For details, refer to the instructions on the CD-ROM.

# **Checking Stored Files**

#### **Checking Files on the Memory Card**

Main menu Data Folder

- 1 Press •
- **2** Select a folder→•
- **3** Select a file→

# **Confirming Memory Card Usage Status**



**1** Select *Memory Card*→ •

#### Tip

 You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below. Press at to switch screens to check the used space on the handset and the memory card.

Main menu  $\rightarrow$  *Data Folder*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc \bullet$  *Memory Status* 

## **Data Folder**

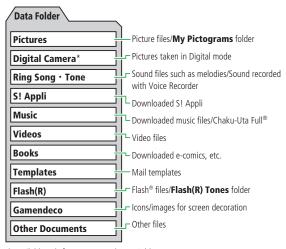
Data Folder of your handset stores the pictures you take, videos you record, files you receive from external devices, files you download from the Web, etc. Saved files can be used as wallpaper and ringtones, or attached to messages (page 17-7).

Data Folder can store up to 10 MB or a total of a combination of approximately 1,000 files and personal folders.

Pictures/My Pictograms/Ring Song · Tone/S! Appli/Music/Videos/ Books/Templates folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai download site.

#### Structure of Data Folder

The following folders are preinstalled in your handset.



<sup>\*</sup> Available only for memory card Data Folder

#### Files Storable in Data Folder

The following files are stored on the corresponding folder in Data Folder.

Folder		File Format (Extension)	Page
Pictures*1		<ul> <li>☑ JPEG (.JPEG, .JPG, .JPE)</li> <li>☑ GIF (.GIF)</li> <li>☑ PNG (.PNG)*³</li> </ul>	10-3
	My Pictograms	☐ GIF (.GIF) ☐ GPK (.GPK)	
Dig	gital Camera* <sup>2</sup>		9-2
Ring Song • Tone*1		<ul> <li>✓ AMR (.AMR)</li> <li>J SMAF (.MMF)</li> <li>✓ MPEG-4*4 (.3GP, .MP4, .M4A)</li> </ul>	10-4
S! Appli		🎮 Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	19-1
■ Music*1		MPEG-4 (.3GP*⁵, .MP4*⁵, .M4A)	10-4
<b>◯</b> Videos*¹		₱ MPEG-4*4 (.3GP, .3G2, .MP4)	10-5
■ Books*1		🕮 CCF (.CCF)	10-5
Templates		HTML mail templates (.HMT)	10-6
Flash(R)*1 Flash(R) Tones		<ul><li></li></ul>	10-6
Gamendeco*1		<b>《</b> / <b>I</b> / <b>I</b> Files for screen decoration (.TSBI1, .TSBW1, .TSBT1)	10-6

Folder	File Format (Extension)	Page
Other Documents*1		10-6

<sup>\*1</sup> Folders can be created in each folder.

#### Note

- Files on the handset may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Files which require content usage rights will have " " " displayed next to the icons on the left side of file names. If you do not have a content key, press (Menu) and select *Buy Key* in order to obtain a content key.

<sup>\*2</sup> Only the Data Folder in the memory card can be viewed. Files that do not comply with the DCF standard cannot be displayed.

<sup>\*3</sup> Downloaded frames and stamps are saved in PNG (.PNG) format.

<sup>\*4</sup> Playback of some files may not be possible.

<sup>\*5</sup> Only Chaku-Uta® files are saved.

<sup>\*6</sup> The files cannot be displayed/played on your handset.

#### Tip

- Chaku-Uta®, S! Appli, video and other files saved to the handset or memory card may become inaccessible after handset repairs or when USIM card is replaced.
- You may not be able to open a file on a PC, PDA, or other device if: You change the file name on your handset or the file name includes a
   "~" or "—".
- DCF is an abbreviation for "Design rule for Camera File system," a standard developed by the Japan Electronic Industry Development Association (JEIDA) for the purpose of facilitating the transfer of digital camera images among various devices.
- Whether a file can be sent via infrared communication or moved to the memory card depends on the forwarding and memory card forwarding permission properties. However, the files in the *My Pictograms* folder can be sent via infrared communication even if the forwarding property is *Unavailable*.
- Flash® is an animation technology that combines images and sound.

# **Using Files & Folders**

# **Opening Files**

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→●

**2** Select a file→ •

#### Connecting to the Web from Folders

Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai download site directly from *Pictures/My Pictograms/Ring Song Tone/S! Appli/Music/Videos/Books/Templates* folders.

#### When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Send**: The following items are displayed.

• As Mail : Send the selected file as S! Mail (page 17-4).

lacktriangle Via Infrared  $\,$  : Send the selected file via infrared communication (page

**Set as**: The following items are displayed.

• Wallpaper : Set the selected file as the wallpaper for Standby.

•In-Calls : Set the selected file as the in-call image.

Messages : Set the selected file as the message receiving image.

**Edit Picture**: Edit the selected image (page 7-19).

11-2)

**Location**: View location information for the selected picture file or connect to the web and display a map.

**Delete**: The following items are displayed.

One : Delete the selected file (page 10-11).

● Select Multi: Select multiple files and then simultaneously delete

(page 10-11).

• All : Delete all files (page 10-11).

Rename: Change the name of the selected file (page 10-10).

**Copy**: The following items are displayed.

One : Copy the selected file (page 10-12).

● Select Multi : Select multiple files and then simultaneously copy

(page 10-12).

• All : Copy all files (page 10-12).

**Move**: The following items are displayed.

• One : Move the selected file (page 10-11).

● Select Multi : Select multiple files and then simultaneously move

(page 10-11).

•All : Move all files (page 10-11). Change View: The following items are displayed.

• View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-7).

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-13).

● Slideshow : Display the pictures in the folder in sequence

automatically (page 10-13).

Create Folder: Create a new folder (page 10-10).

Buy Key: Obtain a content key.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, available/unavailable to save photo, and setting information).

## When Melody Files are Selected/Played

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

**Ringtone**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for incoming

voice/video calls, messages, delivery check messages, missed calls. Circle Talk calls or Hot Status notifications.

● Sound Effects: Set the selected file as power on/off, opening or closing tone.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about **Send**, **Delete**, **Rename**, **Copy**, **Move**, **Sort by**, **Create Folder** or **Buy Key**.

#### When Music Files are Selected/Played

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

Voice Call
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
 Message
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving.

messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

lacktriangle lacktriangle : Set the selected file as the ringtone for missed calls

(page 16-4).

Circle TalkSet the selected file as the ringtone for Circle Talk calls.Hot StatusSet the selected file as the ringtone for Hot Status

notifications.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, title, artist, album name, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

## When Video Files are Selected/Played

Press (Menu) to perform the following: **Set as**: The following items are displayed.

Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.

 Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
 Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.

 Message : Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

**Change View**: The following items are displayed.

● View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-7).

•Sort by : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

10-13).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/ memory card transfer, file type, title, creator, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

#### When Book Files are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

**Change View**: The following items are displayed.

● View Type : Switch the display of files and folders between

thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text

and guide) (page 10-7).

**Sort by** : Changes the order of files in specified condition (page

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, creator, authority, seller, episode, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, description, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about **Send**, **Delete**, **Rename**, **Copy**, **Move**, **Create Folder** or **Buy Key**.

#### When Templates are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Create Mail: Create a message using selected templates.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move* or *Sort by*.

#### When Flash® Files are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

**Set Wallpaper**: Set the selected file as the wallpaper for Standby. **Set as**\*<sup>1</sup>: The following items are displayed.

Voice Call : Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.Video Call : Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.

 Messsage : Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving messages.

DeliveryCheck: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about Send,

Delete, Rename, Copy, Move, Sort by, Create Folder\*2 or Buy Key.

\*1 This item appears when selecting/displaying files in a *Flash(R) Tones* folder.

\*2 The folder can be created only in a *Flash(R)* folder.

### When Files for Gamendeco are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Gamendeco: Set the icons/images of the Main Screen (page 12-6).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by* or *Create Folder*.

#### When vObjects are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/To Notepad/To Message/

**To Bookmarks**: Save vObjects to the Calendar or Phone Book, etc (page 10-9).

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by* or *Create Folder*.

#### When Text Files are Selected/Displayed

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

**Encoding Type**: Change character encoding type

**Details**: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "When Picture Files are Selected/Displayed" (page 10-3) about *Send*, *Delete*, *Rename*, *Copy*, *Move*, *Sort by*, *Create Folder* or *Buy Key*.

#### Tip

 Depending on file size and number of text lines, a file may not be played.

## **Changing the View Format of Data Folder**

Select the list view or thumbnail view to see a list of files contained in Pictures, My Pictograms, Digital Camera, Videos and Books folders.

Main menu Data Folder

- 2 Select Change View  $\longrightarrow$  View Type  $\longrightarrow$  Select the view type  $\longrightarrow$

# **Displaying the Memory Usage Status**

Check the memory space used in Data Folder.

Main menu ► Settings ► Memory ► Memory Status

- **1** Select *Data Folder*→
  - Press 🗹 (Count) to check how many files are stored.

#### Tip

 You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below. Press a to switch screens to check the used space on the handset and the memory card.

Main menu → Data Folder → Memory Status

# Displaying the File Properties

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select a folder→ •
- **2** Select a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Details*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

# **Using Picture Files**

Use picture files stored in Data Folder for wallpaper, incoming images, video calls, Phone Book (picture), and so on.

## 1 Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on setting the wallpaper, see page 12-5.
- For details on setting the incoming image, see page 12-6.
- For details on the video call setting, see page 5-4.
- For details on setting Phone Book pictures, see page 4-2.
- **2** Select *Pictures* → **Select** a file →
- 3 Use ••• to adjust the position of the image to clip

  → □ (Cut) →
  - For details on changing image size, see page 7-19.

#### Note

 If an animation GIF is selected, only the first image (still image) is displayed.

#### diT

Some functions may not allow you to change image size.

# Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files

Use melody files, music files, video files in Data Folder or  $Flash^{\otimes}$  in the Flash(R) Tones folder as a ringtone, incoming image and alarm sound.

## Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on the sound setting, see page 12-3.
- For details on setting the schedule alarm tone, see page 14-23.
- For details on setting the alarm tone, see page 14-14.
- For details on setting a different ringtone for each Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.

# **Using vObjects**

## About vObjects

vObject is a collective name for file formats that enable your handset and other vObject compatible SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to exchange and mutually use data such as Phone Book entries, Calendar and Task data. vObjects can be sent and received as mail attachments (page 17-7) or transfer them by Infrared (page 11-1). If you save vObjects to a memory card, you will be able to use them directly from other memory card compatible handsets, PCs and other devices.

- vObject compatible software is required to use the data of vObjects on a PC or other device.
- Depending on the contents of vObjects, the exchange of vObjects between a vObject compatible handset and PC or other device may not be possible.
- When vObjects include many characters, all vObjects may not be able to be sent or received.
- Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.

# Creating a vObject

- 1 Display a Phone Book (chapter 4)/Calendar (page 14-19)/Tasks (page 14-27)/Message (page 17-11)/
  Bookmark (page 18-5)/Notepad (page 14-17) data
  ■Creating One vObject
  - Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Export \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### **■**Creating Multiple vObjects

## ■Creating All Files as vObjects

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Export \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

2 Select Phone Memory|Data Folder|Memory Card→

Select a folder→

Select a folder→

## Importing a vObject into a Function

Main menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Other Documents

#### ■Importing One vObject

Select a vObject→ w (Menu)→To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/
To Message/To Bookmarks/To Notepad→ →One→ ●

#### **■**Importing Multiple vObjects

Press № (Menu) → To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/To Message/To Bookmarks/To Notepad → ● → Select Multi → ● → Select vObjects → ● → 🗟 (Save)

#### Tip

 When importing a vObject that has a picture to Phone Book, the picture cannot be saved to Phone Book if it exceeds W112 × H112.

# **Editing Files & Folders**

- You cannot create a folder with the same name in the same folder.
- ◆ You cannot use the following single-byte symbols, pictographs and line break icon "◄" for a folder name. "\/¥:;?" <> |.\*\*"

## **Adding Folders**

A new folder can be created in the *Pictures*, *Ring Song* • *Tone*, *Music*, *Videos*, *Books*, *Flash(R)*, *Gamendeco* or *Other Documents* folders.

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select a folder→ •
- **2** Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Z}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Create Folder  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Enter a folder name→ ●

Tip

## **Changing Folder/File Name**

Main menu Data Folder

**■**Changing Folder Name

Select the folder you created  $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Rename Folder  $\rightarrow$  Enter a folder name  $\rightarrow$ 

- If folder security is set (page 10-13), a window appears in which you enter your security code for the operation (page 1-20) after you select Rename Folder
- **■**Changing File Name

# **Deleting Folders/Files**

## **Deleting Folders**

Main menu Data Folder

- 2 Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$

### **Deleting Files**

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→

**■**Deleting One File

■Deleting Multiple Files

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **Select Multi**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select files  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Deleting All Files

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

 If you try to delete a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you delete the file, the setting is reset to the default.

# **Moving Folders**

Move the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select the folder you created  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Move Folder*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Enter your security code (page 1-20)

#### Tip

- If you try to move a folder containing a picture or melody file which is
  used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move
  the folder, the setting is reset to the default.
- A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be moved.
   Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to move.

## **Moving Files**

Move files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→ •

**■**Moving One File

■Moving Multiple Files

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Move  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select files  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Move)

■Moving All Files

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Move* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-20)

**2** Select *Phone Memory|Memory Card*→●

**3** Select the destination folder→●

■ Creating a New Folder to which a File is Moved

Press (Create) → Enter a folder name →

Note

- If Details indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forward or memory card transfer cannot be moved to other folders.
- When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

Tip

 If you try to move a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move the file, the setting is reset to the default.

# **Copying Folders**

Copy the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu Data Folder

1 Select the folder you created→w (Menu)→Copy Folder→ •

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)→*Phone Memory* | Memory | Card → •

**3** Select the destination folder→

 You can select either Ring Song • Tone folder or Music folder as a copy destination folder.

Tip

A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be copied.
 Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to copy.

## **Copying Files**

Copy files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu Data Folder

**1** Select a folder→ •

■Copying One File

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Copy $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select files  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Copy)

■Copying All Files

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Copy  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)

**2** Select *Phone MemorylMemory Card*→

- **3** Select the destination folder→●
  - Creating a New Folder to which a File is Copied

    Press (Create) → Enter a folder name →

#### Note

- If Details indicate that the file is *Unavailable* for forward, the file cannot be copied. However, files in *My Pictograms* folder may be able to be copied even if Details indicate that it is *Unavailable* for the forward.
- When you copy a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP and .MP4) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

# **Setting Folder Security**

 If folder security is set, a window appears in which you enter your security code for operation (page 1-20) when you select the folder.

Main menu ▶ Data Folder

- **1** Select the folder you created→¬¬ (Menu)→ Security Lock→¬
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **3** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

#### Other Functions

#### **Playing Slide Show**

Display picture files in succession about every two seconds.

Main Data Folder Pictures

- **1** Select a file→w (Menu)→*Change View*→
- **2** Select *Slideshow*→

Changing the Order of Files within the Selected Folder

Main menu Data Folder

- **1** Select a folder→●
- 2 Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Change View  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Sort by  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select a sort option→
  - Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by titles.

## **Infrared**

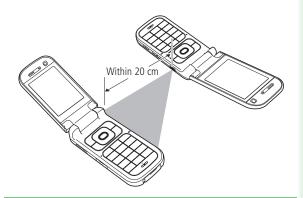
Use infrared to exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Phone Book entries of your handset, memory card or USIM card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible handset, PC or other device.

#### Tip

 The infrared function of your handset complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.

#### Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If the Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If the handset receives a call/video call while it is sending or receiving files via infrared communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled.
- You cannot use USB functions/settings other than the charge function during infrared communication.
- Bring the Infrared Port of your handset to within 20 cm of the Infrared Port
  of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are
  placed between them.



# **Using Infrared**

Files can be sent/received and connected to a dial-up connection via infrared communication. The " indicator appears at the top of the display during transfer.

#### **About the Authentication Password**

The authentication password (4 digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication. When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

## **Activating Infrared**

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via infrared communication.



- **1** Select  $ON \rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - To cancel the infrared communication standby, select OFF.

#### Note

 If the handset does not communicate via infrared communication for three minutes after the infrared communication is ON, the infrared communication standby is canceled automatically.

## **Sending Data**

- 1 Access a function that supports infrared
- **2** Select a file  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Send/Send vCard  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select *Via Infrared*→

#### Note

- The files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

#### Tip

 A part of vObject information may be deleted or changed on some destination devices.

#### **Receiving Data**

The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (left) is **ON**.

- 1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- **2** Select YES→ → Phone Memory|Memory Card →
  - To reject the reception of files, select NO.
  - When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, schedule or task file, select YES to register it on your Phone Book, schedule or task list.

#### Tip

- Some vObject information may not be received.
- When files other than vObjects are received, they are registered in a
  certain folder depending on the file format (extension) (page 10-2). If
  the handset receives a file with the same name as a file registered in
  Data Folder, the name of the received file may be changed.

#### Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

• Some devices may not be able to receive or properly display the entries.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **2** Select *Phone Book|Cal./Tasks*→
  - When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book. Select Without Image to send the Phone Book entries without images.
  - When you send schedules/tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send previous schedules. Select Without Past to send schedules without including previous schedules.
- **3** Enter your authentication password (page 11-1)

#### Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, schedules of the Calendar or tasks can be received from another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices. The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (page 11-2) is *ON*.

- In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **3** Enter your authentication password (page 11-1)
- **4** Select *AddlOverwrite*→
  - Select YES when you select Overwrite.

## **Using Infrared for Dial-up Connections**

The handset can communicate with a PC via infrared communication if the PC is compatible with infrared communication, and the PC can access the Internet via your handset. For details about settings and operations of a modem on a PC, see the manual for the PC.

The handset can use dial-up connections when the infrared communication setting (page 11-2) is ON.

# In Standby, receive a connection request from an infrared compatible PC

#### Note

 The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.

# **Using USB**

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC to transfer music files. You can also check the Data Folder of the handset on your PC.

## **Getting Started**

- Install the USB driver and Phone Monitor software before connecting the USB cable. For details on the installation procedure, refer to the Phone Monitor's Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 810T/811T/813T (CD-ROM).
- For details on the PC operating environments supported, refer to the Phone Monitor's Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 810T/811T/ 813T (CD-ROM).
- For details on connecting the USB cable to a PC, refer to the Phone Monitor's Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 810T/811T/813T (CD-ROM).
- When using a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions/settings other than the charge function during infrared communication.

## Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card

To transfer music files from a PC to your handset, you need to use data transfer mode to establish a connection between the PC and your handset.

- Offline mode is set while your handset is in data transfer mode. When the handset is in offline mode, it cannot make/receive calls, send/receive messages, nor connect to Yahoo! Keitai. In this mode, all the keys are locked.
- Music files cannot be played on the handset unless they are transferred using music transfer software.
- For details on operating music files, refer to the BeatJam 2007 for 810T/811T/813T Guide Book.

#### Switching to Data Transfer Mode While Connected with USB

- 1 Open your handset
- 2 In Standby, use the USB cable to connect your handset to a  $PC \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$



#### Tip

- A confirmation window appears while an S! Appli set as the Screensaver is active.
- In the following cases, your handset does not switch to data transfer mode when you connect it to a PC via a USB cable.
  - The Password Lock is activated
  - · Your handset is closed.
  - Memory card is not inserted.
  - The display setting of the confirmation window (page 11-6) is set to **Do not Display**.

## Switching to Data Transfer Mode from the Main Menu

Switch to data transfer mode manually from the Main menu if the handset does not automatically switch to data transfer mode when connected by USB, or when you want to establish a connection again after canceling the data transfer mode.

1 Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC

2 In Standby, press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Connectivity  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $USB \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Data Transfer  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### Tip

- Offline mode is set while your handset is in data transfer mode. If the handset cannot switch to offline mode because it is communicating with another device, a confirmation window appears.
- A warning window appears if the memory card is not properly formatted. Format the memory card and perform the operation again.
- If the USB cable is unplugged while the transferring data window is shown, a confirmation window appears and the handset is disconnected from the device.

#### **Sending Data**

- 1 Switch your handset to data transfer mode
- **7** Follow the instructions on the PC

#### Note

 Do not remove the memory card while the transferring data window is displayed.

#### **Canceling the Data Transfer Mode**

Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device

## **Setting Display of the Data Transfer Mode Confirmation Window**

Set whether to display the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode.



**1** Select Display/Do not Display→

#### Tip

 If Do not Display is set for the display setting of the confirmation window for switching to data transfer mode, the window does not appear even if a USB cable is connected to your handset in Standby. You can also switch to data transfer mode from the Main menu (page 11-5).

#### Connecting to a PC

#### Using a USB Cable for Dial-up Connections

Use a USB cable to connect your handset to a PC and then access the Internet, etc. For details on the configuration/operation of the PC modem, refer to the instruction manual for the PC.

#### Note

 The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.

#### Using a USB Cable for Charging

While your handset is on, you can charge the battery pack if you connect your handset and a PC using a USB cable. In order to charge the battery of the handset from a PC, turn the battery setting *ON*.



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

- Charging is not possible while the PC or your handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If the handset and PC are connected with a USB cable, either the PC battery or handset battery is consumed depending on the battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.

ON : PC battery is usedOFF : Handset battery is used

#### Tip

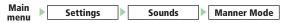
 Compared to using the AC charger or In-Car charger (optional), it may take longer to charge the battery through a USB cable.

# **Sound Settings**

# **Switching Manner Modes**

Manner mode can be selected from the following types.

Manner mode	Description	
Silent (😭)	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker.	
Alarms (🎇)	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker other than the alarm tone.	
Original 1 to 3 (管/管/管)	Customizes the manner mode setting. The following items can be set individually:  Ringtone (Ringtone Vol., Vibration)  Alarm (Alarm Volume, Vibration)  Calendar (Alarm Volume, Vibration)  SI Appli (S! Appli Vol.)  Sound Vol.  Battery  Ans. Phone	



**1** Select Switch  $Mode \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a mode  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **Settings for Each Type of Manner Mode**

Manner mode is set as follows by default:

	Item	Silent	Alarms	Original 1 to 3
	Voice Call	Silent	Silent	Silent
	Video Call			
	Message			
	DeliveryCheck			
	Circle Talk	Siletit		
Ringtone Vol.	Hot Status			
VOI.	S! Appli			
	Missed Call			
	Alarm	Silent	Volume under Alarm Tone (page 14-14)	Silent
	Calendar	Silent	Silent	Silent
	Voice Call	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
	Video Call			
	Message			
Vibration	DeliveryCheck			
	Circle Talk			
	Hot Status			
	Missed Call			

		Item	Silent	Alarms	Original 1 to 3
	Vibration (Continued)	Alarm	Pattern 1	Vibration under Alarm Tone (page 14-14)	Pattern 1
	Calendar	Calendar	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	Pattern 1
	Feeling Settings  Sound Vol.  Effects (Power On, Power Off, Opening Tone, Closing Tone, Keypad Tone)  Battery*		Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 12-4)	Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 12-4)	ON
			Silent	Silent	Silent
			OFF	OFF	OFF
			OFF	OFF	OFF
	Ans. Phone	•	Setting under Answer Phone (page 14-16)	Setting under Answer Phone (page 14-16)	ON

<sup>\*</sup> The voice is heard from the receiver only during calls.

# Customizing Original Manner Mode

Main menu ► Settings ► Sounds ► Manner Mode

- **1** Select *Original Mode*→
- **2** Select an original mode you want to set $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 
  - Select an original mode, press (Menu), and select *Rename* to change the name for the original mode.

■Setting the Ringtone Volume

Select Ringtone → ● → Select an item → Ringtone Vol. →

● → Adjust the volume → ●

■Setting the Vibration for Voice/Video Calls, Delivery Check,
Missed Calls/Circle Talk Calls /Hot Status Notifications
Select Ringtone → Select an item → Vibration → Select a vibration pattern → ●

Setting the Vibration for Receiving Messages

Select Ringtone → → Message → → Vibration → →

Pattern → ○ → Select a vibration pattern → ○

■ Setting the Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages Select  $Ringtone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Message \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Feeling Settings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

■ Setting the Alarm Volume
Select Alarm/Calendar →  $Alarm\ Volume$  → Adjust the volume →  $Alarm\ Volume$ 

■Setting Vibration for the Alarm

Select Alarm/Calendar→ ●→Vibration→ ●→Select a vibration pattern → ●

■Setting the S! Appli Volume
Select S! Appli → Adjust the volume →

■ Setting the Sound Volume
Select Sound Vol.  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■Setting the Effects/Battery Alarm/Answer Phone Select  $Effects/Battery/Ans. \ Phone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

3 Press 🗐 (OK)

# **Setting the Sounds**

Ringtones and ringtone volume can be set for each mode. Some items may not be displayed in some modes.

#### **Setting the Ringtone**

Main Settings Sounds

**1** Select  $Incoming \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select *Ringtone*→•

■Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Ringtone

Select *Patterns*/*Melodies* → Select a ringtone →

■ Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Ringtone

Select  $Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (twice)

#### Note

 If you use SMAF data which includes an image as a ringtone, the image may not be displayed correctly.

## **Adjusting the Ringtone Volume**

Adjust the ringtone volume in five levels or set to Silent. The ringtone volume can be set so that it gradually goes up (Ascending Volume) or down (Descending Volume).

The ringtone volume in manner mode (page 12-1) cannot be adjusted.

Select  $Incoming \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select$  an  $item \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## **Setting the Ringing Duration**

Main Settings Sounds

**1** Select *Incoming*→

2 Select Message|DeliveryCheck|Missed Call|Hot Status

→ → Duration → •

■ Specifying Time by Direct Entry
Select Set Duration → ■→Enter the ringing duration (1 to 99 seconds) → ■

■Playing the Specified File until the End Select *I Cycle*→

Settings

The handset vibrates for incoming calls/messages.

Main menu ► Settings ► Sounds

**1** Select *Incoming* → **•** → Select an item → **•** 

■ Setting Vibration for Receiving Messages
Select Message → → Vibration → Pattern → Select
a vibration pattern → ●

■ Setting Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages
Select  $Message \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Feeling Settings \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

2 Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern → •

## **Setting the Sound Volume**

Set the playback volume of melody files and other files or make it silent.

Main menu Settings Sounds

**1** Select *Sound Vol.*→●

2 Adjust the volume→

#### **Setting the Earpiece Volume**

Adjust the incoming volume through the earpiece.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Sounds

**1** Select *Earpiece Vol.*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

 When the volume is adjusted during a call (pages 2-5, 5-2), the volume is reset after the call is terminated.

## **Setting the Speaker Volume**

Adjust the incoming volume through the speaker.

Main Settings Sounds

Select Speaker Vol.  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Adjust the volume  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## Setting the Sound Effects/Sound Effects Volume

Set the sound and volume that is emitted when you turn on/off your handset or open/close it.

**1** Select Sound Effects  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

- **2** Select *Tone Type* $\rightarrow$ 
  - Setting the Original Tone Preinstalled in Your Handset Select Original → •
  - Setting a Melody Preinstalled in Your Handset
    Select *Melodies* → Select a melody → Se
  - Setting a Tone Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
    Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → Select a file → (twice)
- **3** Select *Tone Volume*→ → Adjust the volume → ●

#### Note

You cannot set files which include an image.

# **Display Settings**

## Setting the Idle Screen

The wallpaper and clock on the Main Display, and the clock on the External Display can be set.

● For details on Date&Time setting, see page 1-15.

## **Setting the Wallpaper**

Main menu Settings Display Idle Screen

**1** Select Main Display→ 

→ Wallpaper → 

•

- Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Wallpaper
  - Select  $Preset \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select$  an image  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)
- Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Wallpaper

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file  $\longrightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to adjust the position of the image to clip  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Cut)  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## Tip

- When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can adjust images, such as resizing and rotating them, by pressing (Resize) (page 7-19).
- When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can set an image with a size of W640 × H480 (W480 × H640) or less by pressing

## **Setting the Clock Display**

Main Settings Display Idle Screen

Select Main Display  $\rightarrow$  Others  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a clock type  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# Setting Wallpaper & Clock (External Display)

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Idle Screen

Select *Ext. Display*  $\rightarrow$  Select a clock type  $\rightarrow$ 

# Settings

12

## **Main Screens**

Designs on each screen of the Main Display can be changed.

## Setting the Icons/Images of the Main Screen

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Main Screens

■ Setting Icons/Images Preinstalled in Your Handset for Screen Decoration

Select  $Normal/Ku-man \rightarrow \bullet$  (twice)

Setting Icons/Images Saved to Data Folder for Screen Decoration

Select **Phone Memory**  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file for screen decoration  $\longrightarrow$  (twice)  $\longrightarrow$  **YES**  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### Tin

- You can change designs of the Main menu by pressing (Menu) in the Main menu and selecting Set Images (page 1-19).
- If the Tab View is applied for the Main menu (page 1-18), you can change designs of the Tab View by pressing (Menu) and selecting Gamendeco.

## **Setting the Image for Incoming Calls**

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Main Screens

Select In-Calls→ → Voice Call/Video Call→ ●

## Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Incoming Calls

Select  $Normal/Ku-man \rightarrow \bullet$  (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Incoming Calls

Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a file  $\longrightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to adjust the position of the image to clip  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Cut)  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### Note

- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone
  Book and the picture setting (page 12-7) is ON, the picture is displayed
  regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you receive a call
  from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-3) set to ON
  when Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to Hide, the incoming image is
  displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 12-3), the incoming image is not displayed.

## Tip

When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can set an image with a size of W640 × H480 (W480 × H640) or less by pressing .

## **Setting the Image for Receiving Messages**

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Main Screens

- **1** Select Messages → → Receiving | Delivery Check →
  - Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Receiving Messages

Select  $Normal/Ku-man \rightarrow \bullet$  (twice)

## ■Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Receiving Messages

Tip

When you select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card*, you can set an image with a size of W640 × H480 (W480 × H640) or less by pressing

## Setting the Download/Power On/Power Off Screen

Main menu Settings Display Main Screens

**Select** *Download*|*Power On*|*Power Off*→

**2** Select  $Normal|Ku-man \rightarrow \bullet$  (twice)

## Setting the Main Display at Once

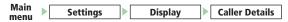
Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Main Screens

**1** Press (All)  $\rightarrow NormallKu-man \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## **Setting the Caller Details**

## **Setting the Picture View**

Set whether if you want a picture to be displayed or not when you receive a call or a video call from a person who is saved to Phone Book with a picture (page 4-2).



**1** Select  $Picture \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- When the picture setting is ON, the incoming image is not displayed. If
  you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page
  4-3) set to ON when Secret Mode (page 13-3) is set to Hide, the
  picture is not displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 12-3), the picture is not displayed.

## Setting the Incoming Call Screen on the External Display

Select whether or not you want the External Display to show the name of a caller saved to Phone Book when receiving a call.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Caller Details

**1** Select *Ext. Display*  $\rightarrow$  *ON/OFF*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## Switching between the 12-hour and 24-hour Clock

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Clock ► 12hour/24hour

**1** Select 12 hour/24 hour→●

Settings

The size and color of the text displayed on the Main Display can be changed.

# Setting the Font Size

Main 

Settings 

Display 

Font Settings

## **Setting the Font Color**

Main menu Settings Display Font Settings

## **Setting the Font Size Collectively**

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Font Settings

¶ Select Font Size → • (All) → Select a font size → •

# **Setting Ku-man for Standby**

3D animation character Ku-man is displayed in Standby. Ku-man communicates with you with the various outfits and gestures depending on the season, area, time of the day, and other conditions.

Main menu ► Settings ► Idle Screen

1 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

- If the Language (page 12-10) setting is *English* or a language other than Japanese is selected in the Automatic settings, or Live Monitor is selected to display new information (page 18-16), Ku-man cannot be displayed in Standby.
- If Flash<sup>®</sup> is specified as Wallpaper (page 12-5), Ku-man and Flash<sup>®</sup> image cannot be displayed at the same time in Standby.

© Dora communications

# **Setting the Backlights**

Adjust the brightness and lighting time of the display backlights.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► Backlight

**1** Select *Displays* → ●

## ■Setting the Lighting Time of the Main Display

Select  $Lighting\ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$  Enter a lighting time (1 to 60 seconds)  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# ■Setting the Brightness

Select  $Brightness \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Bright/Dark \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## Setting the Backlights for Media Player

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Display 
■ Backlight

**1** Select Media Player→ → Always ON/Always OFF/Same as Phone → ●

Tip

 If you select Same as Phone, the setting follows Displays (above) of the backlight settings.

## **Setting the Display Power Saving**

Save battery power by setting the handset to turn off the display after a specified time of inactivity elapses.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Display 
■ Backlight

**1** Select *Power Saving*→

Setting the Display Time of the Main Display
Select *Power Saving* → Select a display time → •

Setting the Keypad Light
Select  $Keypad \ Light \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**External Light Settings** 

## **Setting the Notification External Light**

If you have unchecked information (missed calls, unread messages and Voice Mail), the external light flashes when your handset is closed. You can set the external light not to flash.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► External Light

**1** Select *Notification* → •

#### Tip

If there is more than one unchecked item piece of information including
missed calls, the external light flashes in a color specified for Missed
Call. If there are only unread messages and voice messages, the
external light flashes in a color specified for Messages.

## Setting the Incoming External Light

Set the external light to flash when you have an incoming voice call, video call, message or set the external light not to flash.

Main menu ► Settings ► Display ► External Light

- **1** Select *Incoming*→
- **2** Select an item  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a color/ $OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - Setting the External Light for Receiving Messages

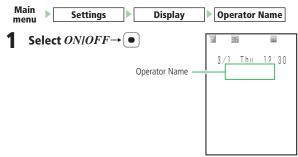
    Select Message → → Pattern → → Select a color pattern →
  - Setting an External Light for Receiving Feeling Messages Select  $Message \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Feeling \rightarrow \bullet ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

#### Note

 If the external light (pages 4-3, 4-6) is set for each Phone Book entry, the settings on Phone Book are given priority.

# **Setting Operator Name Display**

Set whether to display the operator name in Standby.



# Language Setting

Change the language displayed on your handset.



- **1** Select language→
  - If you select Automatic, the handset selects the language set for the language setting in the USIM card automatically.

# **Key Setting**

# **Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts**

Change the functions accessed when you press the navigation keys from Standby.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Phone Settings 
■ Navigation Keys

# ■Changing Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select the function you want to assign to  $\circ$   $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select the function you want to assign to  $\circ$   $\rightarrow$  Select the function you want to assign to  $\circ$   $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

- The remaining function is assigned automatically to •.
- Resetting Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Reset \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## Setting the Side Key Function

Change the function assigned to the side key  $[\cdot]$ . Press and hold  $[\cdot]$  in Standby to access the set function.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Side Key

Select SimpleNoticelTorchlManner Mode→●

# **Sub Menu View Setting**

If more than two sub menu items are displayed when pressing  $\mathbf{w}$  (Menu), set the window so that the item selected most recently is displayed on top.

Main menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Sub Menu View

**1** Select Show|Hide→

#### Note

 This setting is disabled for Circle Talk, Circle Talk Call Log and Hot Status.

# Settings

12

# **Answer Type Settings**

# Setting the Open to Talk

This feature allows you to answer an incoming call by simply opening your handset.



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## **Setting Any Key Answer**

If Any Key Answer is set to ON, you can answer incoming voice/video calls and Circle Talk calls with any of O to O and O and O (for video call).



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

# **Rejecting Incoming Calls**

Set to reject calls with no Caller ID or calls from pay phones. Also reject calls from the specified phone numbers by adding numbers in the rejection list.

# **Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls**

If a call or a Circle Talk call is received from a phone number for which Reject Calls is set, the ringtone does not play and your handset does not vibrate, but Information Prompt (page 1-9) appears and the call can be confirmed in Received Call log (page 2-7).

•If the incoming call barring (page 16-6) is set, the call barring is given priority.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-20)
  - Rejecting Calls from the Specified Phone Numbers
    Select Specific  $\#s \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$
  - Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers Not in Phone Book Select Unknown  $\longrightarrow$  ON/OFF  $\longrightarrow$
  - Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID
  - Select Withheld  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $ON/OFF \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  Rejecting Calls from Pay Phones
  - Select  $Payphone \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$
  - Rejecting Calls for Which the Caller ID Cannot be Displayed

Select  $Unavailable \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

# **Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List**

Add phone numbers to the rejection list to reject calls from those phone numbers.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Reject Calls

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **2** Select Specific  $\#s \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Reject \ List \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Press (Add)

■ Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* → Select an entry → Select a phone number → (twice)

■Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow$  (twice)

■Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select  $Call \ Log \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a phone number  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)

#### Tip

If a phone number is already added, select Reject List and press (Menu) to perform the following:

Edit/Delete

# **Caller ID Setting**

Set whether to notify the other party of your phone number when you make a call.

## **Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID**

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Show My Number

**1** Select *Show My ID*/*Hide My ID*/*OFF* → •

#### Note

- If you select Show My ID, your phone number is always displayed on a phone of the other party regardless of whether you subscribe to Caller ID (page 16-1) service or not. If you select Hide My ID, your phone number is not displayed on the phone of the other party regardless of whether you subscribe to the service or not. If you select OFF, the settings you chose when you subscribed to the service apply.
- For Circle Talk calls, the other party will know your phone number regardless of the settings.

## Tip

Instead of the automatic setting, press (Menu) and select Hide My
 ID or Show My ID while a phone number is displayed before making
 a call.

# **Priority Setting**

Setting how your handset behaves when it receives a call or message while it is operating.

Main menu Settings Priority

- **1** Select the function under operation→
  - Setting the Priority Operation While Media Player is Playing Select Media Player → ( ) → Continue | Pause → ( )
  - Setting the Priority Operation While S! Appli is Running Select S! Appli → Select an item → Pause Apps/
    Continue Apps → ●
  - Setting the Priority Operation during a Circle Talk Session Select Circle Talk → → Pause/Continue → ●
- **2** Select an item→●
- **3** Select *PauselContinue*→ •

# **Memory Settings**

## **Confirming the Memory Status**

Confirm the memory usage status of your handset and memory card.

Main Settings Memory

- **1** Select *Memory Status*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - Press 🗹 (Count) to check how many files are stored.
  - For details on formatting a memory card, see page 9-3.

# **External Device Settings**

Set the access point name (APN) of the network information to perform packet transmission from an external device such as a PC. Up to ten access point names (APN) can be set.

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► External Device

Select  $Empty \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter$  the access point name (APN)  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

# **Network Settings**

# Retrieving Network Information

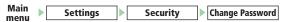
The screen for retrieving network information automatically disappears after you retrieve it once. To change the settings, retrieve network information from the Main menu.

Main menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► Retrieve NW Info

**1** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

# **Changing the Security Code**

Do not forget your security code (page 1-20) and do not reveal it to others.
 Write down your security code.

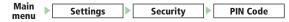


- **1** Enter your current security code (page 1-20)
- 2 Enter your new security code
- **3** Re-enter your new security code for confirmation

## **PIN Codes**

## Setting PIN1 Code Request

Set whether you are requested to enter your PIN1 code (page 1-3) to perform verification each time a USIM card is inserted into the handset and the power is turned on. We recommend you to set to **Activate** to prevent unauthorized use by a third party.

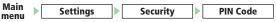


- **1** Select *PIN1 Setting*→ *ActivatelDeactivate*→ •
- **2** Enter your PIN1 code→●

# **Changing PIN Codes**

Change the PIN1 code and PIN2 code (page 1-3). Set PIN1 Setting (left) to Activate before you change the PIN1 code.

 Do not forget your PIN codes and do not reveal them to others. Write down your PIN codes.



- **2** Enter your current PIN1 code/PIN2 code→●
- 3 Enter your new PIN1 code/PIN2 code→●
- 4 Re-enter your new PIN1 code/PIN2 code for confirmation→

# **Canceling PIN Lock**

If the PIN1 code or PIN2 code is incorrectly entered three times in a row, the PIN1/PIN2 lock is set. Cancel the PIN1/PIN2 lock by entering a personal unblocking key code (PUK code). For details on the personal unblocking key codes, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

- 1 Open a function requiring PIN codes when the PIN1/PIN2 lock is set
- **2** Enter the PUK/PUK2 code→
- 3 Enter your new PIN1 code/PIN2 code→
- 4 Re-enter your new PIN1 code/PIN2 code for confirmation→

  •

#### Note

 If the personal unblocking key code (PUK code) is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM lock is set. If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

# **Password Lock**

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, your security code (page 1-20) is required to use the handset. " " "indicator and *Password Lock* appear in Standby when Password Lock is set to ON.

Main 
■ Settings 
■ Security 
■ Password Lock

- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-20)
  - ■Activating Password Lock When You Close Your Handset Select  $Phone \ Closed \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
  - ■Activating Password Lock When Your Handset Goes into Power Saving Mode \_\_\_\_

Select **Power Saving**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **ON/OFF**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■Activating Password Lock When the Handset is Powered On Select  $Power\ Off \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

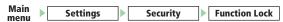
- Unless the Password Lock is OFF, the keys are locked when you perform selected operation.
- To use your handset while Password Lock is activated, enter your security code (page 1-20) to cancel Password Lock temporarily, and then set Password Lock to OFF.
- Phone Closed locks the handset when you close it in Standby. Power Saving locks the handset when the Main Display is turned off after a certain amount of time (as set in the power saving settings (page 12-9)) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make a one-touch call from the stereo earphonemicrophone with audio remote control (optional) while the handset is locked with Password Lock.

## Tip

- When the Password Lock is activated, you can still perform the following operations.
  - Turn the power on and off.
  - Enter the PIN1 code if the **PIN1 Setting** (page 13-1) is set to **Activate**.
  - · Cancel the Password Lock temporarily.
  - Make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast quard).
  - Answer voice calls and video calls (but the Open to Talk and Any Key Answer functions are unavailable).
  - Answer Circle Talk calls (but the Any Key Answer function is unavailable).
  - Stop the alarm (page 14-15).
  - Stop the schedule alarm (page 14-25).
  - Place calls on hold (page 2-3).
  - · Divert calls (page 16-2).
  - Reject calls (page 2-5).
  - Adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received (pages 2-3, 5-2).
  - Pause the S! Appli set as the Screensaver (page 19-5).
- When the Password Lock is activated, Information Prompt (page 1-9) does not appear.
- " " indicator and Password Lock are not displayed in Standby, if the Password Lock is temporarily canceled after it is set to ON.

# **Function Lock**

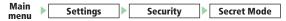
Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks functions, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, your security code (page 1-20) must be entered to access these functions/ features



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **2** Select a function  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow LocklUnlock \rightarrow \bigcirc$

# **Setting Secret Mode**

Set whether to show Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 4-3). "Implicator appears when Secret Mode is set to **Show**.



- 1 Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **2** Select *Show*|*Hide*→

#### Note

• Secret Mode is set to *Hide* if handset power is turned off.

#### Tip

- If you receive a call or message from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ON when Secret Mode is set to Hide, only the caller's phone number or sender's email address is displayed.
- If a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ON is saved to Hot Status Members List, the person's current status (Hot Status information) is not displayed when Secret Mode is set to Hide.

# **IP Service Setting** 811T/813T

Set whether to use Hot Status and Circle Talk.

Main menu Settings Security IP Service

1 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

 Before setting the IP service, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-15).

# **Keypad Lock**

Keypad Lock allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket. "\" indicator appears when Keypad Lock is set.

## Setting Keypad Lock

1 In Standby, press and hold

## **Canceling Keypad Lock**

1 Press and hold • while the Keypad Lock is set

#### Note

- Keypad Lock cannot be set when infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt (page 1-9) does not appear.

# Hold

The hold function prevents unintentional operations while your handset is closed. " indicator appears on the External Display when Hold is set.

## **Setting Hold**

1 Press and hold when your handset is closed

## **Canceling Hold**

Press and hold while the hold is set, and your handset is closed

#### Note

• When the battery level is low, Hold is not set.

## Tip

- Until you cancel Hold, it is enabled each time you close your handset.
- Hold is disabled while a voice/video call is being received, a call is in progress, or during a Circle Talk session.

# **Reset Settings**

Settings and data that will be reset are as follows:

Item	Description		
Reset All	Reset all the settings and data stored on the handset to the default.		
Reset Setting	Reset all the settings to the default.		
Clear Memory	Delete all the Phone Book entries, data in Data Folder, and messages.		
Confirmation	If you select <i>Notify Only Once</i> , and you want to display a confirmation window again, reset the notification setting to the default so that a confirmation window appears again.		

Main		l.		1.	
menu	Settings		Security		Reset

- **1** Select an item→
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - The selected data and settings are reset (initialized), and the handset restarts automatically.

#### Tip

- The data in the USIM card and memory card do not change back to the default after resetting.
- The security code is initialized after reset all.

## **Restricted Mode**

# **Restricting Outgoing Calls and SMS Messages**

Restrict the making of calls and sending of SMS to only phone numbers in the Fixed Dialing Number list. You do not have to enter all the digits in the Fixed Dialing Number list. Make a call or send an SMS to a phone number starting from the entered number. The Fixed Dialing Number list is stored in the USIM card.

 Fixed Dialing Number is available when you use a compatible USIM card.



- **Select**  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter$  your PIN2 code  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- 2 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$

## Adding Phone Numbers to the Fixed Dialing Number List

 Before performing this operation, set Restricted Mode to ON beforehand (above).



**1** Select *Number List*→

- **2** Select  $Empty \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter your PIN2 code \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select  $Name \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a name  $\rightarrow \bullet$
- **4** Select *Phone Number* → **●** → Enter a phone number → 
  - ●If you want to set 0-9 for a certain digit, press ☑ (Menu) and select ワイルドカード. "?" is displayed.

(Example: "090????1234" means the phone numbers through "090**0000**1234" to "090**9999**1234". You can make calls to all these numbers within.)

**5** Press (OK)

#### Note

 To send an SMS, you need to add the SMS center number ("+819066519300") and the destination number to the Fixed Dialing Number list.

## Tip

 The amount of phone numbers and the number of characters in a name which can be entered in the Fixed Dialing Number list depend on the USIM card.

## **Restricting Packet Transmission**

Make packet transmission unavailable.

 Packet restriction is available when you use a compatible USIM card.

Main Settings Security Restricted Mode

Packet

- **1** Select  $ON \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your PIN2 code $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- **2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$

# **Restricting Internet Connection**

Set the handset so it cannot be connected to the Internet by inputting a URL (pages 18-3, 18-7).



- 1 Enter your Internet security code (page 1-20)
  - When Your Internet Security Code is not Registered

    Press → Enter your new Internet security code → → Re-enter
    your new Internet security code for confirmation → → Do not Save
    → ◆
    - To register a clue to your Internet security code, select *Save* and enter a clue
- **2** Select Set Regulation  $\rightarrow \bigcirc ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$

# **Changing Internet Security Code**



- 1 Enter your Internet security code (page 1-20)

  → •
- **2** Select *Change Password*→ (twice)
- **3** Enter your new Internet security code→ ●
- 4 Re-enter your new Internet security code for confirmation→

  •
- **5** Select SavelDo not Save→
  - Registering a Clue to Your Internet Security Code Select  $Save \rightarrow \bigcirc$  → Enter a clue  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

# **Active Window**

## **About Active Window**

Save people to the Members List, and make calls, send messages and initiate Circle Talk calls to them from Active Window. Check the latest information of Live Monitor and weather forecast in Active Window.

Active Window can be easily switched between Shortcut mode and Communication mode.



Shortcut Mode



Communication Mode 811T/813T

#### 1) Members List

Your current status (My Status) (page 20-6) is displayed on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member. Save members from Hot Status Members List to view their status. Make calls, send messages or initiate Circle Talk in Communication mode (page 14-3).

## **②Live Monitor (Shortcut mode only)**

Displays newly received information and images.

**3Weather Indicator (Shortcut mode only)** 

## **Opening Active Window**

# 1 In Standby, press 💍 (twice)

 Press (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication modes.

#### Tip

- Active Window opens in the previously displayed mode.
- Press (Menu) while Active Window is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the mode and the position of the cursor):

Settings/View/Change Member/Change Icon/Edit List/Main Menu/Mail/Yahoo! Keitai

## Members List 811T/813T

Add members to Members List from Hot Status Members List or Phone Book to view their status in Active Window. A maximum of five people can be saved to the Members List.

It is possible to change and delete members, change the icons, and display your own Hot Status information (My Status) (page 20-6).

## **Saving People to the Members List**

■To Change a Member

Select the member you want to change  $\longrightarrow_{\begin{subarray}{c} \end{subarray}}$  (Menu)  $\longrightarrow$  *Change Member* 

2 Select *Members ListlPhone Book*→ 

Select a member →

#### Tip

- To add a member from the Hot Status Members List, you need to save the person to the Hot Status Members List first (page 20-3).
- You cannot save those people to the Members List who have not yet accepted your Saving Request to Hot Status Members List or whom a Deletion Request has been sent to or received from.

## **Editing the Members List**

1 In Active Window, press  $\boxed{}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \ List \rightarrow \boxed{}$ 

- **2** Select a member  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 
  - ■To Save a New Member
    Select *Not Registered* →

#### Tic

 Press (Menu) while a member is selected in the Edit List window to perform the following:
 Delete/Delete All

#### **Changing Icons**

- 1 In Active Window, select a member→ w (Menu)→ Change Icon→ •
- 2 Select *Phone Book/Icon*→ Select a photo or an icon→ •

## **Setting My Status Display**

Set whether or not to display your Hot Status information (My Status) (page 20-6).

- In Active Window, press  $\mathbf{w}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit\ List \rightarrow \mathbf{\bullet}$
- **2** Select *My Status* → **(ON/OFF)**

## **Displaying Hot Status Information**

Display members' or your own Hot Status information.

1 In Standby, press ( (twice)

In Shortcut Mode

Use ••• to select a member → •

**■**In Communication Mode

Use 🐧 to select a member→🗹 (Menu)→*View*→.

#### Tip

- If My Status is selected in Communication mode, press to display the My Status window (page 20-6).
- Hot Status information is not displayed if the person is not saved to Hot Status Members List or is offline.

## **Contacting Members**

In Communication mode, contact members by directly calling, sending a message or making a Circle Talk call.

1 In Active Window, use 🐧 to select a member

**2** Use o select the contact method →

- To make a call
- To create and send a message
- To make a Circle Talk call

## **Live Monitor**

Check the details of newly received information displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.

When new information is received, " " is displayed in Standby.

- The content registered in Live Monitor under Yahoo! Keitai (page 18-16) is displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.
- **1** In Active Window, use **♦** to select the Live Monitor→
  - Press 
    ☐ (Update) to update to the latest information. Press 
    ☐ (Access) to display the selected site.

#### Note

If the reception of new information fails, Information Prompt (page 1-9) appears. Press (Menu) and select *Update* to try receiving the information again.

#### Tip

- To change the site to be displayed in the Live Monitor, press (Menu)
   → Settings → Live Monitor (page 18-16).
- You can set the information to be automatically updated to the latest (page 14-4).

## Weather Information

Check weather forecast in Shortcut mode.

1 In Active Window, use ♦ to select the Weather Indicator→●

14

# **Setting Active Window**

Set Active Window display in Shortcut mode.

## Setting Active Window Template 811T/813T

Set whether to display both Hot Status information and news, or just news in Active Window.

**1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ • → Templates → •

2 Select Status/News or News→

## **Setting Automatic Update**

Set to automatically update the information displayed in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

The time interval for the automatic updates can be set from *Flash News* (1/2/4/8 hours), *News* (24 hours), and *S! Loop* (4 hours).

1 In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ • → Display → •

2 Select Auto Update→ → Flash News/News/ S! Loop→ ●

If you select *Manual*, Flash News is not updated automatically.

# ■To Set News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Select  $Automatic \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

• If you select *Manual*, News/S! Loop are not updated automatically.

#### Note

- Automatic update may not occur if your handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- Automatic updates are unavailable during international roaming.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 14-3) can restart the automatic updates.

## Tip

You can also set the automatic update by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Auto Update

## Displaying/Hiding Live Monitor Info in Standby

**1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ • →Display→ •

**2** Select *Idle Screen*→ • *Idle Display*→ •

**3** Select *Show* or *Hide*→

#### Tip

You can also set the display of Live Monitor by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Idle Screen → Idle Display

## **Setting the Image Display**

Set whether or not the Live Monitor in Active Window displays images of newly received information.

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→

  →Display→

  ■
- **2** Select *Idle Screen*→ *Image Setting*→ •
- **3** Select *Show* or  $Hide \rightarrow \bullet$

#### Tip

You can also set the image display by the following operation.
 Main menu → Yahoo! Keitai → Live Monitor → Settings → Idle
 Screen → Image Setting

## Setting the New Information Displayed in Active Window

Set whether to display all the newly arrived information or just the unread information in Active Window.

- **1** In Active Window, press w (Menu)→Settings→ →Display→ •
- **2** Select *Unread/Read*→
- **3** Select *Unread Only* or *Show All*→

#### Tip

 If you select *Unread Only*, the ticker is not displayed until the next new information arrives when there is no unread information.

## **Setting the Ticker Speed**

Set the scroll speed and the shifting rate of the newly arrived information displayed in tickers in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

- **1** In Active Window, press ☑ (Menu)→Settings→ → Display→ •
- **2** Select  $Screen Speed \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select a speed \rightarrow \bullet$

# **Simple Mode**

The Simple mode enables easy and simplified operations of the various full mode functions. Select the font size and menu pattern for the main menu (Simple menu) for often used functions when you switch to the Simple mode.

- The full menu can be displayed without exiting the Simple mode if you want to use functions that are not available in Simple mode.
- The items set in either mode are available even when switching from the Simple mode to full mode and vice versa.

# **Switching to Simple Mode**

Select the font size and menu pattern when you switch to the Simple mode.

- 1 In Standby, press and hold 🗟
- 2 Select YES→ → Select a font size → → Select a menu pattern → (twice)

The mode changes to the Simple mode.

#### Tip

You can also switch to the Simple mode by the following operation.
 Main menu → Settings → SimpleMode ON

# **Displaying the Simple Menu**

There are three patterns for the Simple menu. Select a pattern when you start up the Simple mode, though you can change it later. You can also switch between the Icon display and List display.

The menu patterns are listed below.

Display Method Menu Pattern	Icon Display			List Display
		Create Message Phone Book	Manner Mode	Message Box Create Message Manner Mode Add to Phone Book
Menu 1	Phone Book Settings	Search My Number	Tools Full Menu	Phone Book Search Tools Settings My Number Full Menu
	Alarms	Camera	Data Folder	Alarms Camera Data Folder
Menu 2	Messaging	Phone Book	Tools	Messaging Phone Book Tools
	Settings	My Number	Full Menu	Settings My Number Full Menu
	Yahoo! Keitai	Camera	Data Folder	Yahoo! Keitai Camera Data Folder
Menu 3	Messaging	Phone Book	Tools	Messaging Phone Book Tools
	Settings	My Number	Full Menu	Settings My Number Full Menu

- 1 In Simple mode, press
  - The Icon display and List display switch every time you press (Switch).

## Tip

 Press (Menu) while the Simple menu is displayed to perform the following.

Menu Patterns/Guidance

## Displaying the Full Menu in Simple Mode

- **1** In Simple mode, press  $\bullet \rightarrow Full\ Menu \rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - Press in the full menu to return to the Simple menu.

## **Turning Off Simple Mode**

- In Standby, press and hold 🗑
- **2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$

The Simple mode is turned off.

#### Tip

You can also turn off the Simple mode by the following operation.
 Main menu → Settings → SimpleMode OFF

# **List of Simple Mode Functions**

The functions that can be used in Simple mode are listed below.

- If you want to use functions that are not available in Simple mode, display the full menu (page 14-7).
- The Simple mode settings are reflected in the full menu.

# Simple Menu

14

	Menu Item	Description	Page
Settings		Refer to the list of "Settings".	14-11
My Number		Same function as in full mode	2-10
	Alarms	Up to six alarms can be set.	14-14
	Answer Phone		14-16
	Notepad	Same function as in full mode	14-17
Tools	Calculator		14-17
	Dictionary		14-18
	Calendar	Monthly view only Saving, editing and deleting events/tasks cannot be done.	14-19, 14-27
	Scan Data		7-11
	Kitchen Timer	Same function as in full mode	14-32
	NAVI		21-1
	Ku-man's Room		22-4
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Tools menu in full mode.	_
Full Menu		Displays the full menu without turning off the Simple mode.	14-7

	Menu Item	Description	Page
	Phone Book		4-1
	Video Call		5-1
Phone Book	Add New	Same function as in full mode	4-1
Phone Book	Call Log		2-6
	Group		4-5
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Phone Book menu in full mode.	-
Phone Book Searc	h		4-8
Add to Phone Boo	k		4-1
	Message Box	Same function as in full mode	17-11
	Create Msg.		17-4
	Retrieve Msg.		17-2
Messaging	Drafts		17-10
	Templates		17-7
	Unsent Msg.		17-11
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Messaging menu in full mode.	ı
	Received/Sent		17-11
Message Box	Drafts		17-10
	Unsent Msg.	Same function as in full mode	17-11
Create Message	Create Msg.		17-4
Create Message	Templates		17-7
Manner Mode		Turns manner mode on or off.	2-10

	Menu Item	Description	Page
Alarms		Up to six alarms can be set.	14-14
	Mobile		7-5
Camana	Digital	Same function as in full mode	7-5
Camera	Video		7-9
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Camera menu in full mode.	-
Data Folder			10-1
	Yahoo! Keitai	Complete and the second of the second	18-1
	Bookmarks		18-5
Yahoo! Keitai	Saved Pages	Same function as in full mode	18-4
ranoo: Keitai	Enter URL		18-7
	Manufacture #		18-13
	Full Menu	Displays all items of Yahoo! Keitai menu in full mode.	-

indicates the display is different depending on the selected menu pattern.

# Functions Available with the Simple Menu "Settings"

	Menu Item	Description	Page
	Wallpaper		12-5
Idle Screen	Clock/Calendar	Same function as in full mode	12-5
	Ku-man		12-8
	General	Only Large/Medium setting possible	12-8
Fout Circ	Messaging		12-8, 17-20
Font Size	Mobile Web		12-8, 18-12
	Text Entry	Same function as in full mode	3-15, 12-8
	Incoming		12-3
Sounds	Earpiece Vol.		12-4
	Keypad Tone Vol.		12-4
Manner Mode	ON/OFF	Turns manner mode on or off.	2-10
wanner wode	Switch Mode	Switches manner mode (original manner mode cannot be edited).	12-1
	Voicemail ON		16-3
Diverting	Deactivate All	Same function as in full mode	16-3
	Listen VM		16-4

	Menu Item	Description	Page
	Password Lock		13-2
Security	Reject Calls		12-12
	Reject Message		17-22
	Change Password	Comp for attended in full mode	13-1
Clock	Date & Time	Same function as in full mode	1-15
	12 hour/24 hour		12-7
	World Clock		14-34
I41 C-11-	Select Network		2-12
Intl. Calls	Operator	Only Automatic/Manual setting possible	2-11
Save 1-touch		A phone number is saved to Phone Book and assigned to either soft key to make calls.	-
Full Menu		Displays all items of Settings menu in full mode.	_
Simple Mode 0	)FF	Turns off the Simple mode.	14-7

# **Functions Available from Standby**

Operation	Function	Description	Page
•	Simple Menu	Refer to "Simple Menu".	14-6
Press and hold	Keypad Lock/Unlock	Same function as in full mode	13-4
G.,	My Details	Displays the same items as in "My Number" in Simple mode.	_
ं	Active Window		14-1
Q	Phone Book Search		4-8
Press and hold 🗘	Earpiece Volume		2-5
••	Dialed Numbers	Same function as in full mode	2-6
Press and hold •	Sent Message Log		17-4, 17-9
•	Received Calls		2-7
Press and hold •	Received Message Log		17-4, 17-9
<b>②</b> , ₩	One-touch Calling	Makes a call to a phone number assigned to either soft key and saved to Phone Book.	_
Press and hold @	Simple Mode Off	Turns off the Simple mode.	14-7
P	Shortcut Menu	Assigning an item to the Shortcut menu is not possible.	14-41
Press and hold 🕫	Information Prompt		1-9
9579XE	Answer Phone/Recorded Message Playback		2-4
Press and hold 20004	Answer Phone On/Off	Same function as in full mode	2-4
Press and hold ## 200	Manner Mode On/Off	same function as in full mode	2-10
Press and hold *	Hold		13-5
Press and hold 🖯	Function Preset with the Side Key Setting		12-11

<sup>\*</sup> This operation is for when your handset is closed.

## **Alarms**

An alarm name, alarm time, ring setting, repeat setting, snooze setting can be set to alarm setting. The "to "indicator appears in Standby when Alarm is set. At the set time, the alarm tone, vibration and image display are activated. The External Light also flashes.

## **Setting Alarms**

14

Main menu ► Tools ► Alarms

**1** Select an alarm→●

■Setting an Alarm Name

Select an alarm name→ • → Enter an alarm name → •

■Setting an Alarm Time

Select *Time* → ● → Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system → ●

**2** Press (OK)  $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Alarm is set.

- If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.
- Press (ON/OFF) to turn off the alarm you have set.

#### Note

• Alarms do not sound when the handset power is OFF.

#### Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you
  are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is
  reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or
  during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a
  picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- When you change the Main City (page 14-35) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date& Time* setting (page 1-15) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

## Setting the Alarm Tone/Alarm Volume/Vibration/Ringing Duration/Image

Main menu Tools Alarms

- **1** Select an alarm→
- **2** Select *Alarm Tone*→
  - ■Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as an Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select an alarm tone  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as an Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select$  a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)

■ Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Time \ Reading \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Setting the Alarm Volume

Select *Volume* → ( • ) → Adjust the alarm volume → ( • )

■ Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern → ●

 If you select *Link to Sound* for the vibration pattern, the handset vibrates with the melody (only melody files that vibrate the handset with the SMAF format) which is set as an alarm.

■ Setting an Alarm Duration

Select *Duration* → Enter an alarm duration →

■Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select  $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Original \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select  $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select an image  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Use \ \stackrel{\bullet}{\checkmark}$  to adjust the position of the image to  $clip \rightarrow \searrow$  (Cut)  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ OK $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

 The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the alarm (page 12-2) are OFF for the Original Mode of manner mode (page 12-1).

Setting the Repeat/Snooze

Main Tools Alarms

**1** Select an alarm→

■ Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select  $Once \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

When you select Weekly, specify which days to start the alarm.
 Press to remove/check mark → (OK)

**■**Setting the Snooze

Select Snooze o o ON/OFF o o Enter an interval between alarm tones o o

 If the snooze is set to ON, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five times.

# **Deleting Alarms**

Main menu Tools Alarms

**■**Deleting One Alarm

■Deleting All Alarms

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Reset All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **Alarm Time**

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any button while the alarm is going

 For the 811T, the alarm does not stop if you press the Music Player keys.

■Returning to Standby

Stop alarm→

■ Stopping Snooze and Returning to Standby Stop alarm  $\rightarrow Stop\ Snooze$   $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow YES$   $\rightarrow$ 

## **Answer Phone**

This feature can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a voice call. The "" indicator appears in Standby when the Answer Phone set to *ON*. Your handset can store up to five messages and each message can be up to 30 seconds long.

## **Setting the Answer Phone**

14

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

**1** Select *Setting*→

**2** Select  $ONIOFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

 You can also set the Answer Phone if you press and hold proven in Standby.

#### Note

- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver (page 19-5).
- Answer Phone is not available for video calls and Call Waiting (page 16-4).
- When manner mode (Original Mode) is set, Answer Phone settings in Original Mode (page 12-2) are given priority. If you set or cancel Answer Phone while manner mode (Original Mode) is set, change the Answer Phone settings in Original Mode.
- If your handset receives a call when the *Answer Phone* is *OFF*, and you recorded a message by pressing and holding property, the *Answer Phone* turns to *ON* after the call automatically.

#### Tip

- When the Auto Answer (page 14-44) is ON, the Answer Phone is given priority.
- If you press while the handset is playing an answering message or a caller is recording a message, you can talk with the caller.
- If you press ((i)) while a message is being recorded, you can listen to the message through the speaker.

## **Setting the Ringing Duration**

Specify the length of the time that the handset receives a call to the time the answer message activates.

Main menu ► Tools ► Answer Phone

**Select** Set Duration  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Enter the ringing duration→●

# **Playing/Deleting Messages**

Main menu Tools Answer Phone

## **■**Playing a Message

Select *Recordings* → Select a message →

 Unheard recorded messages have "I displayed. Messages you have heard have "I displayed.

## ■Deleting a Message

Select  $Recordings \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a message  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

# **Notepad**

Main menu Tools Notepad

Tip

- To edit the stored content, press after selecting the notepad.
- If the contents are already stored, select the notepad and press
   (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete/Set Category/Export/As Mail

## Setting the Category Icon According to the Contents of the Notepad

Main Tools Notepad

- **1** Select a notepad $\rightarrow$  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Set Category $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select a category→

The icon of the selected category is displayed.

# **Calculator**

Main menu Tools Calculator

Key	Function	Key	Function
□ b ~ 9 5 × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × × ×	Enter Numbers	•	=
ं	+		Switch +/-
·	_	(S)	Tax
••	×	9J794E	C (Clear)
<b>•</b>	÷	(U.17)	Decimal
POMEN	Exit		

Tip

- To display the result of the tax rate calculation in red, press a once. To display the amount including tax in green, press a again.

currency conversion calculations.

Clear All : Delete the input value and data stored in memory.

**MS** : Save the input value to memory.

**M+** : Add the input value to the value stored in memory.

**MR** : Display the value stored in memory.

% : Calculate a percentage.

I/X : Calculate a reciprocal.

SORT : Calculate a square root.

Set Tax Rate : Set the tax rate when you press . Enter the tax rate

and press (•).

## Converter

Main Tools Calculator

**1** Press ☑ (Menu)→Converter→ • →Exchange Rate → • →Main Currency|Sub Currency • •

Enter the exchange rate  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (three times)

# **Dictionary**

The dictionary data ( $\mathcal{BFX/\Gamma}(Jispa)$ ) include a Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), English-Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), and a Japanese-English dictionary (approximately 36,000 entries) on the supplied CD-ROM.

•To use the dictionary function, install the dictionary data from the supplied CD-ROM to the memory card. For details, refer to the instructions on the CD-ROM.

"Jispa" of Gakken Co., Ltd. is bundled as Japanese dictionary, English-Japanese dictionary and Japanese-English dictionary.

Main menu Tools Dictionary

■Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in Japanese

Select  $Japanese \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \blacksquare \rightarrow \text{Enter a keyword} \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \text{Select a word} \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■Entering an English word to look up its meaning in Japanese

Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in English

Select *Japanese-English* → □ → □ → Enter a keyword → □ → Select a word → □

#### Note

 Do not turn off the power or remove the memory card while using the dictionary data. Doing so may damage the dictionary data.

## Tip

- You can switch dictionaries by pressing (Switch) while a word is selected. You can see the meaning of a word by selecting the word and pressing.
- After selecting a word and pressing , press (Menu) to perform the following:

Copy Meanings/Copy Header

## **Calendar**

Up to 400 events (up to 100 events a day) can be registered on the calendar screen. If you set the *Calendar* in the Others setting (page 12-5), the calendar in Standby displays an icon on the day an event is registered.

## **Opening Calendar**

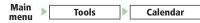
Set to open Calendar in Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View or All View.



- 1 Press S→Select a calendar view format
  - You can switch the calendar view between Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View and All View.
- 2 Select a day→ Select an event→ •

## **Using Information Registered in the Event**

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the Event. You can refer to messages, websites, and images.



**1** Select a day→ ● → Select an event → ●

- **2** Select an item→

  - Sending a Message to the Stored Phone Number

    Press → Create Mail → Create a message
    - See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 17-9) about the following operations.
  - Sending a Message to the Stored Email Address
    - Press → Create a message
    - See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the following operations.
  - Connecting to the Stored URL Press  $\bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$
  - Referring to the Message Which has been Linked Select *To Messages* → ●
  - Referring to the Web Page Which has been Linked Select To Saved Pages → ●
  - Referring to the Picture Which has been Linked Select *To Pictures* → ●

#### Using Registered Phone Numbers and Email Addresses in Contents

Main menu Tools Calendar

**1** Select a day→ 

Select an event→ 

Output

**2** Select an item in *Contents* → •

■ Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number

Press → Create Mail → Create → Create a message

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 17-9) about the following operations.

Sending a Message to the Selected Email Address

Press ● → Create Mail → ● → Create → © → Create a message • See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the

following operations.

■Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Press lacktriangledown o o o Add o o o Add a Phone Book entry

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

#### What can you do on Monthly View/Monthly&Event View/4-Month View Window?



In the Monthly View window, the cursor is in orange, and "" " shows that an event is registered. In this window, an icon is displayed on a day that an event is registered.

Go to the previous month by pressing  $\boxed{\textbf{X}}$  . In the 4-Month View window, the previous 4 months are shown.

Go to the next month by pressing  $\boxed{\text{H}^{\frac{1}{600}}}$ . In the 4-Month View window, the next 4 months are shown.

Monthly View Window

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete :Delete events by selecting For this Day, Before Today or

All.

Set Holiday : Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the

week.

To Tasks :Open Tasks Window.

Jump :Jump to the specific day.

Settings :Use Reminder (page 14-26), set the Calendar Lock (page

14-26), set the display format of the calendar (page 14-19),

and set text colors (page 14-27).

#### What can you do on Weekly View Window?

In the Weekly View window, the cursor is in orange. A starting time and an event title are displayed on the date that an event is registered.

Go to the previous week by pressing X = 1.

Go to the next week by pressing  $\mathbb{H}^{A/g}$ .

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete : Delete events by selecting For this Day, Before Today or

All.

**Set Holiday** : Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the week.

To Tasks : Open Tasks Window.

Jump : Jump to the specific day.

Settings : Use Reminder (page 14-26), set the Calendar Lock (page

14-26), set the display format of the calendar (page 14-19),

and set text colors (page 14-27).

#### What can you do on Daily View Window?

Go to yesterday by pressing \*\* ... Go to tomorrow by pressing \*\* ... Go to

If *Not Completed* is displayed, unfinished tasks can be displayed by pressing 

.

Press (Menu) to perform the following:

Edit :Edit the selected event.

Delete :Delete events by selecting One or For this Delete.

 Delete
 Delete events by selecting One or For this Day.

 Export
 Export the selected event to Phone Memory/Memory Card.

Send :Send the selected event as an **As Mail** or **Via Infrared**.

**Jump** :Jump to the specific day.

14

#### What can you do on All View Window?

Press  $\[ \]$  (Menu) to perform the following: **Edit**: Edit the selected event.

Delete : Delete events by selecting One, Select Multi or All.

**Search** : Search for events by specifying a stamp icon.

Export : Export the selected event to **Phone Memory/Memory Card**.

Send :Send the selected event as an As Mail or Via Infrared.
Settings :Use Reminder (page 14-26), set the Calendar Lock (page

14-26), set the display format of the calendar (page 14-19),

and set text colors (page 14-27).

## **Adding a New Event**

Main menu Tools ► Calendar

## Press 🗐 (Create)

■Entering a Title of the Event

Select  $Title \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Entering a title} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Setting the Start Date and Time for the Event

Select  $Start\ Date \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Date \&\ Time | Date\ Only \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter date and time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Enter only the date, when you selected *Date Only*.
- Setting the End Date and Time for the Event
  Select End Date → → Enter date and time →
  - Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Press (OK)

#### Tip

- You can store events from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The events on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- You cannot store your events without entering *Title* or *Contents*.
- Press \( \overline{\chi} \) (Menu) while registering an event to perform the following operations (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):

Reset/To Call

#### **Setting the Alarm**

You can set the alarm to notify you about an event. At the set time, the alarm tone or time reading, vibration and image display are activated, and the alarm date and time and the event title are displayed on the Main Display.

Main menu Tools Calendar

1 Press  $\bigcirc$  (Create) $\rightarrow Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select *ON*→ •

■Setting an Alarm Date and Time

Select  $Time \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter an alarm date and time  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

■ Setting an Alarm Duration

Select *Duration* → Enter a ringing duration →

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select an alarm tone  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select *Tone*→ • *→ Time Reading* → •

■Setting the Alarm Volume
Select Volume → → Adjust the alarm volume → ●

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration* → Select a vibration pattern → ●

**■**Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time Select Image → • Original → •

■Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$  $OK \rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

 If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you
  are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is
  reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or
  during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a
  picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- When the manner mode (page 12-1) or alarm volume of the Calendar in Original Mode (page 12-2) is set to *Silent*, the alarm does not play.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 12-2) are OFFF for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 14-35) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date& Time* setting (page 1-15) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

### Other Settings

Main Tools Calendar

1 Press (Create)

Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select Options→ → Repeat for→ → Do not Repeat|Daily|

Weekly|Monthly|Yearly|End of Month→ → Enter a repeat

duration→ ●

Setting the Stamp Icon
Select Stamp Icon→ ● → Select the stamp icon→ ●

**■Entering Contents**Select *Contents* → ■→Enter contents → ■

Setting a Location
Select Location → ● → Enter location information → ●

Select *Options* → Oategory → O→Select a category →

■ Setting a Phone Number/Email Address/URL

Select Phone Number/Address/URL → ● → Enter a phone number/email address/URL → ●

 You can make a voice call or video call, create a message, and connect to a website on the details window of events (page 14-19).

■ Setting Link to a Message/Website/Image
Select Messages/Saved Pages/Pictures → Select a message/
web page/image →

 You can look up messages/websites/images that you set in the details window of event (page 14-19).

**Displaying/Hiding Events**Select *Options* →  $\bigcirc$  → *Show/Hide* →  $\bigcirc$  → *Show/Hide* →  $\bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set the Repeat for setting to *End of Month*.
- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if
  you wish to cancel repeat features. Select *Do not Repeat* to delete the
  event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a repeated event may not be effective if the event is sent (page 10-9) and received by another device.

#### Tip

- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set *Monthly* for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.
- If you set *Hide* for event display/hide, your security code needs to be entered to view or edit events. Only " " is displayed on the calendar window, and no icon is displayed on the calendar in Standby.

## **Editing the Events**

The stored events can be edited.



**1** Select a date→

**2** Select an event $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**3** Select an item $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Edit$  the item $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**4** Press (OK)→Overwrite|Save as New→

## **Deleting Events**

Main Tools Calendar

#### **■**Deleting One Event

#### ■Deleting All of Today's Events

Select a date  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $\biguplus$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$   $For this Day <math>\longrightarrow$  YES  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **■** Deleting All Previous Events

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Before Today $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$ 

#### ■ Deleting All Events

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

#### **■** Deleting Multiple Events

Press  $\longrightarrow$  Switch to the All View  $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\longrightarrow$  Select Multi  $\longrightarrow$  Select events  $\longrightarrow$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### Alarm Date & Time

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

- 1 Press any button while the alarm is going.
  - For the 811T, the alarm does not stop if you press the Music Player keys.
  - Returning to Standby Stop alarm→
  - Checking the Event Details
    Stop alarm → (View)

## **Jumping to the Specified Date**

Enter a date and then display the events for that date. This function cannot be used from the All View window.

Main menu Tools Calendar

Press  $\boxed{ }$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Jump \rightarrow \boxed{ }$ 

**2** Enter a date→●

## **Setting the Calendar Lock**

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-20) in order to browse the Calendar.

Main 

Tools 

Calendar

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Calendar Lock $\rightarrow$ 

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)

**3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→●

#### Note

 If you set Calendar Lock to Lock, an event title is not displayed when the alarm sounds (page 14-23). The Details window cannot be viewed either.

## Changing the Colors of Dates and Days of the Week

Change colors of specified dates and days of the week on the Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, and 4-Month View, and on the calendar displayed in Standby if you set Calendar in the Others setting (page 12-5).

Main Tools Calendar

■ Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Date

Select a date  $\rightarrow$   $\begin{tabular}{l} \begin{tabular}{l} \begin{tabular$ 

■Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Day of the Week

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Set Holiday $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Week $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the day of the week $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a color $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

#### Tip

 If you set colors both in Current Day and Select Week, colors set in Current Day are given priority.

#### **Using Reminder**

Reminder sets off the alarm at a specified time, and displays events and tasks (page 14-27) of today or the following day.

Main menu Tools Calendar

1 Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Reminder $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Setting Display

Setting Remainder Alarm Time
Select *Time* → ■ → Enter a time → ■

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

■ Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

■Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Set Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory$   $Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select \ a \ file \rightarrow \bigcirc \ (twice)$ 

#### ■Setting the Alarm Volume

Select  $Set\ Alarm o o o Volume o o o o ext{Adjust the alarm volume}$ 

## ■Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select  $Set\ Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Vibration \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select\ a\ vibration$  pattern  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### ■ Setting an Alarm Duration

Select  $Set\ Alarm o o o Duration o o o$  Enter a ringing duration o o

## **■**Setting Alarm Repeats

Select *Once*→ Select an item→

2 Press (OK)

## **Setting First View**

Select from Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, or 4-Month View for the event view window at the time of launch of the calendar.

Main Tools Calendar

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ First View $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select a calendar view format→

## Setting the Text Color

Set text colors and border colors on the Daily View/All View window.

Main menu Tools ▶ Calendar

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Font Color $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select a color→

## **Tasks**

Up to 100 tasks can be stored on the task list. View the entire tasks in a list format, or separately by Not Completed and Completed. Also set priorities and categories.

## **Adding Task Items**

Main menu Tools Tasks

■Entering a Title

Select  $Title \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \text{Enter a title} \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■ Setting a Due Date and Time

Select  $Deadline \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a due date and time  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

■ Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

2 Press (OK)

**Convenient Functions** 

- You can store tasks from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The tasks on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- You cannot store your tasks without entering *Title* or *Contents*.

### **Setting the Alarm**

14 Main Tools Tasks

1 Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Create  $New \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select  $ON \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Setting an Alarm Time
Select *Time* → ■ →Enter an alarm time → ■

• Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting an Alarm Duration
Select Duration → ● → Enter a ringing duration → ●

■ Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Patterns/Melodies \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select an alarm tone  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Phone \ Memory/Memory \ Card \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select$  a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)

■ Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm Select  $Tone \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Time\ Reading \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Setting the Alarm Volume

Select *Volume* → ● → Adjust the alarm volume → ●

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Vibration*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a vibration pattern  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**■** Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time Select Image → • → Original → •

■Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select  $Image \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $Phone Memory/Memory Card <math>\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an image  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Use  $\bigcirc$  to adjust the position of the image to  $clip \rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Cut)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  (OK) $\rightarrow$ OK $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

 If you select Notify Only Once when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

- For details about how the handset operates during the alarm, see page 14-23.
- When the manner mode (page 12-1) or alarm volume of the Calendar in Original Mode (page 12-2) is set to Silent, the alarm does not play.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 12-2) are OFF for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 14-35) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned *ON* or *Date&Time* setting (page 1-15) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

#### Other Settings

Main 

Tools 

Tasks

1 Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Create \ New \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Setting the Stamp Icon

Select *Stamp Icon* $\rightarrow$ [ $\bullet$ ] $\rightarrow$ Select the stamp icon $\rightarrow$ [ $\bullet$ ]

**■**Entering Contents

Select *Contents*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter contents  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Displaying/Hiding Tasks

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show/Hide \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

■Setting Priority

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Priority \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select a priority  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

■Setting Status of Tasks

Select *Options*→ 

Status → Select a status of task → 

Select of t

2 Press (OK)

Tip

 If you set *Hide* for task display/hide, your security code needs to be entered to view or edit tasks. Only " " " is displayed on the Tasks window, and title and deadline are not displayed on the Tasks window.

## **Opening Tasks**

Main menu Tools

**1** Select  $Tasks \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Changing the View Format of the Task List

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Change View $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select the view format  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Changing the Status of Tasks

Select a task $\rightarrow @$  (Status) $\rightarrow Not \ Completed/Completed/Overdue$  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

From the task list, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 Create New/Edit/Delete/Change View/Sort by/Search/
 To Calendar/Export/Send/Settings

### **Using Information Registered in the Tasks**

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the tasks.

Main 📗	Tools	Tacks
menu	10013	Idaka

**1** Select a task→ • → Select contents including information → •

**2** Select the information→●

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number
Select Voice Call → → → (Menu)→Voice Call/Video Call

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select  $Create \ Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Create \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Create \ a \ message$ 

 See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the following operations.

■Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select  $Save\ Sender 
ightarrow igotarrow Add\ New/Add 
ightarrow igotarrow Add\ a\ Phone Book\ entry$ 

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

■Connection to the Selected URL

Select *Connect*→

 If you have selected a URL including location information, select Web Access/Navi Appli/To Locations.

## **Deleting Tasks**

Main Tools Tasks

**■**Deleting One Task

Select a task $\rightarrow$  $\checkmark$  $\checkmark$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  $Delete \rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$  $One \rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Deleting All Tasks

Press  $\[ \searrow \]$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow AII \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

You can delete all tasks from the All View window.

■Deleting Multiple Tasks

Press  $\begin{tabular}{ll} \begin{tabular}{ll} \begin{tabular}{ll$ 

## Setting the Tasks Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code in order to browse the Tasks list.



- Press  $\square$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Tasks Lock $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **3** Select  $Lock/Unlock \rightarrow \bullet$

## **Time Table**

Time table from Monday to Saturday can be created. Subjects, classrooms, and font colors of up to eight classes can be registered.

## **Registering a Time Table**

Main menu Tools Time Table

Adding a Subject/Classroom/Teacher/Memo

Select an item $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter information $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Setting the Background/Font Color
Select BG Color/Font Color→ Select a color→

2 Press 🖾 (OK)

## **Checking the Time Table**

Main menu ► Tools ► Time Table

**1** Select a period→●

Tip

 You can switch between the subject window and the subject/classroom window by pressing (Change) on the Time Table window.

## **Copying Time Tables**

Copy a registered time table and paste it in another time table.

Main Tools Time Table

Select a period  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Copy \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select the destination period→●

• To copy another period, repeat Step 2.

3 Press 🖾 (OK)

Tip

• If you want to cancel the time table you have copied, press (Menu) and select *Undo* after copying the time table.

## **Deleting Time Tables**



■Deleting One Time Table

■Deleting All Time Tables

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Delete* $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$ *All* $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$ *YES* $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

14

## **Setting Time Table**

## Setting Starting/Ending Time of a Time Table

Main menu Tools Time Table

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Set Time $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

2 Select a period→ ● → Enter a start time → ● → Enter an end time → ●

• Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

3 Press 🗟 (OK)

Tip

• To reset the changed start/end time to the default, press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Settings \rightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow Reset\ Time \rightarrow (Menu) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow (Menu)$ 

## **Kitchen Timer**

Use Kitchen Timer as a countdown timer.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► Kitchen Timer

**1** Enter countdown time→●

2 Press • (Start)

3 Press • (Stop)

- The level of the alarm volume is that set for the Sound Vol. setting (page 12-4). If manner mode is set to *Silent* or *Alarms* (page 12-1), no sound is emitted for the alarm.
- The alarm rings if you close the handset after starting the kitchen timer.

## **Voice Recorder**

The voice recorder allows you to record sound and save the recording data to Data Folder of the handset or memory card. Although the possible length of recording time depends on the amount of available memory space in Data Folder, the maximum recording time is 90 minutes for each recording.

• Please use the voice recorder exercising common morals and manners.

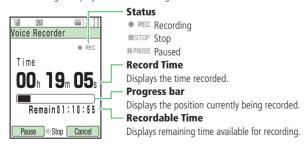
## **Recording Sound**

Sounds recorded with the voice recorder are automatically saved in the *Ring Song\*Tone* folder. You record through a microphone (mouthpiece).

- Please note that recording some concerts and shows aren't allowed even for personal use.
- If the handset receives a call while you are recording, the recording stops and is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls while you are recording, set the handset to the offline mode (page 2-11).

## **Recording Window**

The following is displayed on the recording window.



#### Recording



- **1** Select *Record* → **●** (twice)
  - Press 🝙 (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press 💽 To save the recording data, press 📦 (Save).
  - To stop recording, press
    ■.
  - When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds, " REC " flashes.

### **Changing Destination Folders**



- Select *Record*→
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Select Storage $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **3** Select *Phone Memory* | *Memory Card* → •

## **Playing Recordings**

Playback of what you recorded during a call (page 2-5) is possible.



- **1** Select Recordings → → Phone Memory | Memory | Card → ●
- **2** Select a file→ •

## **Number Memo**

## **Viewing a Number Memo**

Main 
menu 
Tools 
Useful Tools 
Number Memo

**1** Select a number memo→

14

Tip

- You can make a call by selecting a phone number registered in the Number Memo and pressing
- Select a phone number registered in the Number Memo and press to display the Circle Talk confirmation window. Then, press and hold to make a Circle Talk call.
- While selecting a number memo, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Video Call (page 5-1)/Circle Talk (page 6-2)/To Phone Book (page 4-2)/Hide My ID (page 12-13)/Show My ID (page 12-13)/Add to List (page 12-13)/Send Message (pages 17-4, 17-9)/Delete

## **World Clock**

Time displayed on the time display, event, and alarm is the time in a city you set in Set as Main City (page 14-35). If you set the time for City 1 and City 2, and select *World-Digital* or *World-Analog* in the Others setting (page 12-5), then the time and date of City 1 and City 2 can be displayed in Standby.

## **World Clock Setting**

## Setting City 1/City 2



- **1** Select City 1/City  $2 \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Use **•••** to select a city→

### Setting the GMT Offset

Select a city by entering a GMT time difference.



- **1** Select City 1/City  $2 \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow GMT$  Offset  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Use  $\diamondsuit$  to select the time difference  $\multimap$  (twice)

## Setting Daylight Saving Time (DST)

When the daylight saving time setting is *ON*, "\*" is displayed on the world clock. "\*" is displayed on the clock in Standby.

- **1** Select City 1/City  $2 \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow DST ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### **Editing City Names**



- Select City 1/City  $2 \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Use **••** to select a city→**•** (Menu)→*Rename City*
- **3** Enter a city name→●

Tip

- To reset all city names, select *City 1/City 2*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Reset Name*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *YES*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- You can enter up to 13 characters for a city name, regardless of whether they are single-byte or double-byte characters. On some windows, a part of a city name may be omitted.

## **Switching the Main City**



- **1** Select Set as Main City→ •
- **2** Select City 1/City 2→ ●

## **Displaying World Clock**

On the world clock window, you can view dates, time, and time difference by moving a cursor (yellow line) on the map. City 1 and City 2 of the World Clock settings (page 14-34) are displayed in green and red lines respectively.

Main menu ► Tools ► Useful Tools ► World Clock

1 Use •• to select a city

● To switch to Daylight Saving Time (DST), press 
☐ (DSTon) or
☐ (DSToff).

## **Backup**

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other information to a memory card. The backup files can be restored on the handset from the memory card.

## **Transferring files to a Memory Card**

Main ► Tools ► Backup

**1** Select Transfer  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Backup \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select data→

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

■Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press (Menu)→Mark All/Unmark All→

- 3 Press ☐ (Trans.)→ → Enter your security code (page 1-20)
  - When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book.
     Select NO to send the Phone Book entries without images.
  - When transferring events/tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send previous events. Select *Futures Only* to send events without including previous events.

#### Note

- Some data cannot be transferred to the memory card.
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to the memory card or deleted from the handset after the transfer.
- The security settings on the handset are not reflected in the transferred data.

- Offline mode is set during backing up to the memory card. When the backing up of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- The name of transferred files are 2-digit year, month, and day and serial numbers.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.

## Restoring

Main menu Tools Backup

**Select** Transfer  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Restore \ A|Restore \ B \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

- The restoring method varies by models which performed data backup. If *There are no data*. is displayed when selecting either *Restore A* or *Restore B*. select the other item.
- **2** Select data→●
  - To select other data, repeat Step 2.
  - ■Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Mark All/Unmark All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

- Press 
  (Read)→

  Enter your security code (page 1-20)
  - Restoring Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/ Notepad

Select  $Add/Overwrite \rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select data  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

 If you select Add, you can add data without deleting data stored on the handset.

#### Note

- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred
- The security settings on the data restored to the handset are not reflected in the transferred data.

- Offline mode is set during importing data from a memory card. When the importing of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Depending on the amount of entries, it may take some time to restore Phone Book from the memory card.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.

14

## Restoring Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)

Transfer data on the SoftBank handset (except 3G) that is stored in the memory card to the handset.

Main ► Tools ► Backup

**1** Select Transfer  $All \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow From \ non-3G \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select data→●

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

■ Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press → (Menu) → Mark All/Unmark All → ●

Press ☐ (Read)→ ● →Enter your security code (page 1-20)

#### Note

- Some data created on the SoftBank handset (PDC) may not be restored to the handset.
- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security settings on the data restored to the handset are not reflected in the transferred data.

#### Tip

- Offline mode is set during importing data from a memory card. When the importing of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Transferred data is saved in the corresponding data folders on your handset respectively.

## **Deleting Backup Data**

Data in the memory card transferred from the handset can be deleted collectively or individually.

Select Transfer All  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Delete Data  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Deleting All Data

Select  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-20)

Select Select Data  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select data  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/ Notepad

Select data→

■ To select other data, repeat Step 2.

■Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Mark All/Unmark All* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Delete) $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## **Backing up Function Settings**

Back up settings to memory card and use it when restoring handset settings.

## **Transferring to Memory Card**

Main 
■ Tools 
■ Backup

- **1** Select *Relocate* → → Enter security code (page 1-20) → *Backup* → ●
- **2** Select an item→
  - To select another item, repeat this step.
  - lacktriangle To select/deselect all items, press  $\begin{array}{c} lacktriangle$  (Menu) ightharpoonup Mark All/Unmark All 
    ightharpoonup
- **3** Press ⓐ (Trans.)→ → Enter a File Code→ Re-enter the code →
  - A File Code is required for each backup file. The code is required when restoring settings to handset.

#### Note

 Do not forget File Code and do not reveal it to others. If necessary, write down code

#### aiT

 Handset switches to offline mode during backup. Once backup is completed, offline mode is canceled.

## **Restoring Settings**

Setting data of the handset or another SoftBank handset stored in the memory card can be restored to the handset.

Main Tools Backup

- **1** Select  $Relocate \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter$  your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow Restore|From\ non-3G \rightarrow \bullet$
- 2 Select setting data→ → Enter the security code for backups → •

Setting data is restored, and the handset automatically restarts.

- Offline mode is set during importing data from a memory card. When the importing of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- After selecting setting data, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Delete/Details

## **Using International Call Service**

When making an international call, simply add the international code and then select a country code from a list after entering the other party's phone number. Also change the international code and add entries to the country code list

A separate application is required for using the international call service.
 For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

14 Changing the International Code

Main 

Settings 

Call Settings 

Call Services 

Intl. Calls

1 Select *Intl. Code*→ → Enter your security code (page 1-20)

The default international code appears.

**2** Enter the new code→ ●

## Adding an Entry to the Country Code List

The country code list already includes the country codes of 17 countries. You can also edit and add entries. The list can contain up to 20 entries.



- **1** Select CountryNumber→ ●
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Enter a country name→ •
- **4** Enter a country code →

The country code is added.

#### Tip

After selecting a country name in the country code list, press (Menu) to perform the following:

#### Edit/Delete\*

\* Only the entries for the three additional country codes can be deleted.

## **Shortcut Menu**

If you assign frequently used functions to the Shortcut menu, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

## **Setting the Shortcut Menu**

Up to 40 items of the handset's functions can be registered. Names and icons of the registered functions can be changed.

- **2** Press (Assign)

#### Tip

- The following functions are assigned as defaults.
  - Create Message
- Message BoxCalendar
- Main Menu

Media Player

Time Table

Calculator

## Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu

- 1 In Standby, press 📵
- **2** Select a function→

#### Note

• Up to two functions can be called up from the shortcut menu.

#### Tip

- If there is information you haven't viewed, the indicator appears on Information Prompt (page 1-9), and you can view the information.
- If you call up a file registered in the shortcut menu, certain operations may not be available.

## **Editing the Function Names**

- In Standby, press 📵
- **2** Select a function  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Edit\ Title \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Enter a title→

#### Tip

The names of preset functions (left) cannot be changed.

## **Changing the Shortcut Icons**

- 1 In Standby, press 📵
- **2** Select a function  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Change Icon*  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 
  - Setting an Icon Preinstalled in Your Handset Select *Preset Icons* → ( ) → Select an icon → ( )
  - Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
    Select *Phone Memory/Memory Card* → → Select an image →
     → Use ❖ to adjust the position of the image to clip → խ (Cut)
    → ●

Tip

• The icons of preset functions (page 14-41) cannot be changed.

**Moving Icons** 

1 In Standby, press 📵

**2** Select a function  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Arrange Icons  $\rightarrow$  •

**3** Select a destination→●

**Deleting Shortcut Icons** 

1 In Standby, press 🖲

**2** Select a function→ (Menu)

■ Deleting One Shortcut Icon Select  $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■ Deleting All Shortcut Icons
Select Delete All → ● → Enter your security code (page 1-20) → YES
→ ●

Tip

 The preset functions (page 14-41) cannot be deleted from the shortcut menu.

## **Sending Touch Tones**

Send touch tones to use interactive voice response services and other types of touchtone services.

## **Sending Individual Touch Tones**

1 Press any of the D.D to 9.0, X and # keys during a call

## **Sending Touch Tones Sequentially**

Phone Book is useful for storing sequences of touch tones (page 4-2) for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices.

After the handset is connected, press 🗹 (Menu)

2 Select *Phone Book* → Select a Phone Book entry →

3 Select the phone number containing the touch tones→ (Menu)

**4** Select Send Tone→

• You can send up to 32 touch tones at one time.

## Using the Pause (P) for Sending Touch Tones

The pause "P" allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause "P". It is convenient if you register multiple touch tones such as remote operation numbers of your home phone.

#### Saving Touch Tones to Phone Book

Example: Save the following three numbers.

Phone number : *03-123X-XXX3* 

Answering machine code : #7777

Answering machine playback code : #1

# 1 Save 03123XXXX3P#7777P#1 as the phone number of an entry

• For details on registering a Phone Book entry, see page 4-2.

#### **Sending Touch Tones**

# 1 Open a Phone Book entry containing the touch tones

• For details on how to access a Phone Book entry, see page 4-7.

Press 🕜

A call is made to the phone number before the first "P".

3 Press •

The sequence of touch tones before the next "P" is sent.

Repeat this step until all the touch tones have been sent.

## Using the Stereo Earphone-microphone with Audio Remote Control (Optional)

If you connect the stereo earphone-microphone with audio remote control (optional) to the handset, simply pressing the switch of the audio remote control allows you to dial a preset phone number or answer a call without even opening your handset.

- 1 Open the earphone microphone jack cover (1)
- 2 Insert the plug of the stereo earphonemicrophone into the earphone microphone jack (2)



#### Note

 When plugging or unplugging the plug to/from the earphone microphone jack, the plug must be parallel with the jack.

#### **Setting the Phone Number** Main Settings Call Settings **Earphone** menu **Earphone Call**

Select  $ON \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■ Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book Select **Phone Book**  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Select a phone number→ (twice)

■Entering a Phone Number Directly Select **Phone Number**  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a phone number  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$  (twice)

**One-touch Calling** 

In Standby, press and hold 🗥 of the remote control

• If you press and hold of the remote control again during dialing, the call is canceled.

Press and hold ( or of the remote control to end the call

Alternatively, you can press to end the call.

Note

 You cannot make calls if you set the remote control's hold to disable the key operations.

## **One-touch Answering**

When a call is received, press and hold of the remote control

Press and hold ( or of the remote control to end the call

Alternatively, you can press to end the call.

#### Note

• You cannot answer calls if you set the remote control's hold to disable the key operations.

• If the handset is in manner mode (page 12-1) and the earphonemicrophone is plugged in, a ringtone set in the normal mode sounds through the earphone.

## **Setting the Auto Answer**

Set to answer a call without having to press a key while the stereo earphonemicrophone with audio remote control (optional) is connected. Also change the length of time before a call is answered.



Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow [\bullet] \rightarrow ON \rightarrow [\bullet]$ 

# **2** Select Set Duration $\rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $\rightarrow$ Enter the answer time

- If you set Auto Answer and the Answer Phone (page 14-16), Answer Phone is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voicemail (page 16-3), the one with shorter answering time is given priority. If the answering time is the same, Voicemail is given priority.

## **About Idokoro Mail**

Inform of your arrival or departure by mail notification when you arrive or leave a specified area (Arrival/Departure Mail), and send your location information by a simple operation (Simple Notice).

#### Note

- The Arrival/Departure Mail and Simple Notice cannot be created if there
  is not enough memory. Delete sent messages or unnecessary messages
  in the *Unsent Msg.* message box (page 17-17) or change the
  Auto-delete setting (page 17-14) to *Set*.
- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, the handset position
  can be determined by the base station information. However, depending
  on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error
  could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed when the positioning function is locked (page 21-4).
- Communication fees are charged for sending the Arrival/Departure Mail and Simple Notice, and for the positioning service.

#### Tip

 The Idokoro Mail function identifies the handset location using GPS and sends the location information as a mail attachment to the specified people.

## Saving People to the Recipients List

Save the people you want to notify about your location to the notification list. You can save up to five people to the list.

Main Tools Idokoro Mail

- Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$ Recipients List $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- 2 Select an empty field on the Recipients List→

  → Recipient→ → Select a person from Phone

  Book→ → Select a phone number or email

  address→ •
- 3 Select various notification mails (page 15-3)  $\rightarrow$  Yes/No $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$
- 4 Press (OK)

## Tip

 Press (Menu) while the Recipients List is displayed to perform the following:

#### Delete/Delete All

 The phone number or email address saved to the Recipients List is retained even if the relevant Phone Book entry is deleted.

## **Saving Areas to the Areas List**

When the handset leaves or arrives at a specified area, Departure Mail or Arrival Mail is sent to people who have been set as **Yes** for departure or arrival notification on the Recipients List. You can save up to seven areas to the Areas List.

Main	16	Tools	Idokoro Mail
menu		10015	IUUKUIU Mali

- **1** Enter your security code (page 1-20)→*Areas List*
- Select an empty field on the Areas List  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  $Area\ Name \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$  Enter the area name  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$
- 3 Select Set Location → Set the location information
  - To Set Your Current Position
    Select Current → → Start positioning
  - To Select from the Location Logs
    Select Location Logs → Select location information → ●
  - To Select from Location Memos
    Select My Locations→ → Select location information → ●
  - ■To Select from Phone Book
    Select Phone Book → Select a Phone Book entry that has location information → ●

- 4 Select Launch Setting→ ●→Set a time range in which Arrival Mail or Departure Mail will be sent
  - ■To Specify the Date

    Select Select Date →  $\bigcirc$  → Date →  $\bigcirc$  → Enter a date →  $\bigcirc$  → Arrivals Time/Departures Time →  $\bigcirc$  →  $\bigcirc$  ON →  $\bigcirc$  → Enter the start time and duration →  $\bigcirc$  →  $\bigcirc$  (OK)
  - ■To Specify the Day

    Select Weekly →  $\bigcirc$  → Arrive/Depart for the day you want to specify  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  →  $\bigcirc$  ON  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  → Enter the start time and duration  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)
- **5** Press 🗐 (OK)

Tip

- You can enable or disable an Areas List entry by pressing (ON/OFF) while the entry is selected on the Areas List.
- Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.
- Press (Menu) while an Areas List entry is selected to perform the following:

#### Delete/Delete All

 Press (Menu) while creating the Areas List to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):
 Reset(Show Details

## **Sending Notification Mail**

Arrival Mail or Departure Mail is sent when the handset arrives in or leaves from a specified area. Simple Notice allows you to easily notify people of your location.

## Leaving or Arriving in the Specified Area

When the handset leaves or arrives at the specified area during the specified time, Departure Mail or Arrival Mail is sent to the people who have been set as **Yes** for sending Departure Mail or Arrival Mail on the Recipients List.

## **Sending Simple Notice of Your Location**

You can easily notify of your location by sending Simple Notice to the people who have been set as **Yes** on the Recipients List.

## **1** In Standby, press and hold $\overline{\cdot}$

Positioning starts and notification of your location is sent automatically.

- Sent Arrival Mail, Departure Mail and Simple Notice messages are stored in the *Idokoro* folder in the *Sent* message box.
- You cannot send Simple Notice if the Side Key setting (page 12-11) is set to anything other than SimpleNotice.

## **Optional Services**

- For details on services, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- If you are out of the service area, you cannot operate the service from the handset.

Call Divert	Use this service to forward calls to a preset phone number (page 16-2).
Voicemail	This service allows a caller to leave a message at the Voicemail Center when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress (page 16-3).  Missed Call Notification Information Prompt (page1-9) notifies you of calls that your handset could not receive while outside the service area or handset was powered off.
Call Waiting	This service allows you to place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 16-4).
Multiparty Call	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 16-5).

Call Barring	Stop all outgoing and incoming calls including international calls (page 16-6).
Caller ID	This service allows you to notify your phone number to the other party when you make a call and allows you to confirm the phone number of a caller (page 12-13).

## **Call Diverting**

Calls and video calls are transferred to a specified phone if the handset is OFF or is out of the service area. If **All Calls** is selected for the transfer conditions, " " (Voice/Video), " (Voice Call) or " (Video Call) is displayed in Standby.

## Setting/Activating Call Divert



• To confirm the current Call Divert setting, select *Status*.

■ Diverting All Calls to the Preset Number

The ringtone does not sound before forwarding the call.

Select All Calls → ●

■ Diverting Calls You do not Answer within the Set Time
Select No Answer → → Select the answer time → ●

2 Set a phone number

■ Selecting an Entry from Phone Book
Select Phone Book → Select an entry → • → Enter a phone number → • (twice) → Connect to the network automatically → •

■ Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select Phone Number → ● → Enter a phone number → ● (twice)

→ Connect to the network automatically → ●

■Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select *Call Log*  $\longrightarrow$  Select a phone number  $\longrightarrow$  (twice)  $\longrightarrow$  Connect to the network automatically  $\longrightarrow$ 

#### Note

- You cannot use Call Divert and Voicemail at the same time.
- If you start Call Divert while you are using Voicemail, Voicemail is deactivated.

#### Tip

- You cannot set the following phone numbers as forwarding numbers.
  - Phone numbers starting from "1" (ex. 110, 119, 118)
  - Phone numbers starting from "0120" (toll-free numbers)
  - Phone numbers starting from "0990" (dial Q2 and others)

## **Receiving calls after activating Call Divert**

- ●If you press ✓ while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to a caller.
  - If you set *All Calls*, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to a forwarding number.

## **Deactivating Call Divert/Voicemail**

Main menu Settings Call Settings Call Services

Diverting

## **1** Select *DeactivateAll*→

● To confirm the current Call Divert/Voicemail settings, select *Status*.

#### Note

- If you select *DeactivateAll*, both Call Divert and Voicemail are deactivated.
- If you are not using Call Divert nor Voicemail (below), and you want to reject a call, press (Divert) while the phone is ringing.

## Voicemail

Transfer calls to Voicemail Center (ie: when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress). If you set *All Calls* in the forward settings to forward calls to the Voicemail Center, """ is displayed in Standby. When the Voicemail Center receives a new message, Information Prompt (page 1-9) appears if the notification of a new voicemail function (page 16-4) is set. """ appears when you have a new message.

## **Activating Voicemail**



- **1** Select *Voicemail ON* $\rightarrow$ 
  - To confirm the current Voicemail setting, select *Status*.
- **2** Select No Answer  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select the answer time  $\rightarrow$



 If you select All Calls, calls are forwarded to the Voicemail Center without ringing or vibrating the handset.

#### Note

- You cannot use Voicemail and Call Divert at the same time.
- If you start Voicemail while you are using Call Divert, Call Divert is deactivated.

### Receiving calls after activating Voicemail

- If you press 
  while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to a caller.
  - If you set All Calls, the handset does not receive calls, but they
    are forwarded to the Voicemail Center.

#### Voicemail service

 The Voicemail has several functions such as recording an answering message and using a voicemail message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

### **Listening to Your Voicemail**

Main menu Settings Call Settings Call Services

Diverting

**1** Select *Listen VM* $\rightarrow$  •

Tip

 To access voicemail while overseas, dial +819066514170 (connection fees apply).

## **Missed Call Notification**

Information Prompt (page 1-9) notifies you about the calls that the handset could not receive because it was out of the service area or the power was off while Voicemail was set. If Voicemail Center receives a message while you are on another line, the handset receives a notification.

In Standby, enter 1414 and press  $\overline{\hspace{0.1in}}$ 

Follow the voice prompts.

Tip

- You can also set it with the procedures below.
   Main menu → Settings → Call Settings → Call Services → Missed Calls →
- To set from a fixed-line phone in Japan, dial 0906651414.
- To set from outside Japan, dial +819066514191 (connection fees apply).

## **Call Waiting**

Call Waiting service enables you to answer a newly received voice call while you are talking on another voice call. Also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

This service is unavailable for Video calls.

## **Setting/Activating Call Waiting**



**1** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

To confirm the current Call Waiting setting, select Status.

## **Using Call Waiting**

1 During a call, the Call Waiting tone is heard

The name and phone number of the caller appear on the display.

**2** Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Answer \rightarrow \bullet$ 

The original caller is placed on hold and a connection is established with the second caller. Both original and second names are displayed.

#### Tip

- When Voicemail or Call Diverting is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voicemail Center or the forwarding number. When active service is set to All Calls, Call Waiting is disabled.
- To forward a call received while you are on another line, set No Answer for the Call Divert.
- When the Call Waiting tone is heard, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Answer/End & Answer/Reject Call/Divert/End All Calls

### Switching between Two Callers

**1** During Call Waiting, press **2** ♣ **C** 

Press 2 to switch between callers.

### If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting

A ringtone sounds and the screen displays *Holding*. Press to start talking with a person on hold.

# **Multiparty Call**

Call other parties during a call and switch between the parties or talk to multiple parties simultaneously. Connect with up to five parties simultaneously.

This service is unavailable for video calls.

### Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call

**1** During a call, enter a phone number→ ✓

The original party is placed on hold and you can talk to another party.

● You can select a phone number from Phone Book (page 4-7) or call log (page 2-6) after pressing ☑ (Menu).

### **Switching Your Connection between Parties**

- **1** During a call, enter a phone number→ ✓
- 2 Press 2. Press
  - Press 2 to switch between callers.

### If a caller terminates a call during a call

● A ringtone sounds and the screen displays *Holding*. Press to start talking with a person on hold.

### **Talking to All Parties**

**1** During a call, enter a phone number→ ✓

2 When the other party answers, press 🔀 (Menu)

3 Select *Multiparty* → ● → *Multiparty* → ● You can talk to all parties.

Pressing 🗃 during a Multiparty call

End calls with all parties.

Ending a line during a Multiparty call

Other lines remain connected.

Talking to the selected party only

# **Call Barring**

Restrict outgoing and incoming voice calls, video calls and SMS messages.

### **Activating Call Barring**

Main menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Call Services ► Call Barring

■ To confirm the current Call Barring setting, select *Status*.

■ Restricting Outgoing Calls

Select *Outgoing Call* → ● → Select a barring condition → ● → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-20) → Connect to the network automatically → ●

All Outgoings : Stop all outgoing calls.

**All Out-Intl.** : Stop all outgoing international calls.

Out-Intl. : Stop all outgoing international calls except to Japan.

■ Restricting Incoming Calls

Select *Incoming Call* → Select a barring condition → 

Enter your call barring service code (page 1-20) → Connect to the network automatically →

All Incomings: Stop all Incoming calls.

All If Roamed: Stop all Incoming international calls.

 After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

#### Note

- You can still make emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) when the call barring service is activated.
- You cannot use All Outgoings and All Incomings if you have started using the Call Divert or Voicemail service. (Call Divert or Voicemail is given priority.)

### **Deactivating Call Barring**



- 1 Select Cancel All→ → Enter your call barring service code (page 1-20) → Connect to the network automatically →
  - After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

### **Changing Your Call Barring Service Code**



- **1** Select Security Code→ •
- **2** Enter your current call barring service code
- **3** Enter your new call barring service code→
- **4** Re-enter your new call barring service code for confirmation→
  - After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

# **About Messaging**

#### S! Mail

Exchange long text messages, pictures, sounds, vObjects, etc. with other SoftBank handsets. PCs and other devices connected to the Internet.

• To use S! Mail and receive email, an additional contract is required.

#### SMS

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

#### Tip

### • About the Retry Function

When the other party's handset is turned off or out of range, the message is stored on the mail server and will be sent when the signal is available.

# **Customizing Handset Address**

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset address.

(Default)

(Custom)

Enter Account Name@softbank.ne.jp

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai (page 18-1) access.
- Before using Mail, retrieve the network connection information (page 12-14).
- Changing your email address is an effective way of preventing spam.
- **1** In Standby, press → 設定・申込 (Settings/Applications)
- **2** Select *各種変更手続き* (Changing Applications)→

  →オリジナルメール設定 (メール各種設定) (Original Mail/Mail settings)
  - Follow the onscreen instructions.

#### Tip

You can also change your email address with the procedures below.
 Main menu → Messaging → Settings → Mail Address

# **Displaying New Messages**

When a message is received, animation plays while the ringtone is playing. The "" indicator appears at the top of the display. When you receive a "Feeling Mail" message, a pictograph that shows an emotion (emoticon) is displayed. Received messages are saved to *Received*.

See in Information Prompt (page 1-9) whether there are any unread received messages. When there are any unread "Feeling Mail" messages, the emoticon of the last received "Feeling Mail" message is displayed in the background of Information Prompt.

- In Received, there are a general folder, Ku-man folder, Idokoro folder and 17 user folders. You can save received messages to your specified folder (page 17-14).
- When you receive an S! Mail message, the reception method varies depending on how big the file is or if there are any attachments. If the message reception method has been set to *Immediate* (page 17-22), all the contents are received automatically.
- **1** When Information Prompt appears, select *New Messages*→●
- **2** Select a folder→ → Select a message → •

#### Tip

- If you receive a message during a call, an electronic tone will sound.
- If you send a message when delivery check (page 17-22) is set to Ask, you will receive a mail delivery report from the service center.

### **Checking New Messages**

Main Messaging

**1** Select *Retrieve Msg.*→

### When There Is Not Enough Memory for New Incoming Messages

If someone attempts to send you a message when there is not enough memory on your handset, you won't be able to receive it. When this happens, a warning message will appear. When you fail to receive a message, the "" indicator appears in Standby. Delete unnecessary messages (page 17-17).

#### Note

- S! Mail notifications, that are not received because of insufficient memory, won't be sent again by the Retry function (page 17-1). Obtain the Mail List (page 17-19) and receive them. For re-sending mail reception notifications, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- When Auto-delete (page 17-14) is set to Set and memory becomes full, the oldest read message is automatically deleted when a new message is received. Protected messages (page 17-17) are not deleted automatically.

#### If You Receive a New Message When You Are Not in Standby

When you set Priority setting (page 12-14) for message reception to *Pause*, and if you receive a new message while operating your handset, a confirmation window will appear asking you whether you want to read it now or later. If you want to read the new message now, select *Read Now*. Select *Read Later* if you are going to read it later.

# **Checking Received Messages**

If someone sends you an S! Mail message that meets any of the following criteria, the message will temporarily be stored on the mail server and the initial portion of the message is sent as an S! Mail notification. When you receive an S! Mail notification, the "==" indicator appears on the display.

- When an S! Mail exceeds 284 characters (284 bytes)
- When a file is attached
- When multiple addresses are specified
- When the subject contains 41 or more single-byte characters
- $\bullet$  When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters



### ■Retrieving the Complete S! Mail

Select an S! Mail notification  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  etrieve Mail  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ 

#### Note

- If you receive the rest of the message, transmission fees may be charged on the recipient's side. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- It may be impossible to display/play a file until you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file. If you cancel while in the process of receiving content key, it will be sent to you after a while.
- Messages exceeding 300 KB cannot be retrieved.

#### Tip

- Alternatively, you can press a in Standby to access the Messaging menu.
- When a new SMS with 161 or more single-byte characters is received, the messages will be combined automatically. While receiving a combined message, the message *Linking SMS*. is displayed in the Received message in the Message Box.
- To receive complete messages automatically, set Retrieve Mode (page 17-22) to *Immediate*.
- You can reply (page 17-15) or forward (page 17-15) messages from received messages.

### Forwarding Messages from Mail Server

When you receive an S! Mail notification, manually forward the message from the server to your PC or other device.

- **1** Open an S! Mail notification →  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) → *Divert* →  $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select Server Mail→●
- **3** Select *Keep|Do not Keep*→
  - For details on how to enter address, see page 17-4.
- 4 Press (Divert)

# **Creating & Sending an S! Mail**

Send a long message with up to 15,000 double-byte characters/30,720 single-byte characters or a message with images and melodies attached.

You can send an S! Mail message of up to 300 KB including the address, subject, body text and attachment files. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the data size of the attached file.

Main menu Messaging Create Msg.

**1** Select  $Address \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter an address

Specify a phone number (up to 24 digits) or an email address (up to 254 characters). Up to 20 addresses are allowed with To, Cc, and Bcc combined.

■Selecting an Address from Phone Book

Select  $Phone Book \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an entry  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a phone number/email address  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

■Entering a Phone Number/Email Address Directly

Select  $Phone\ Number|Email \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow$  Enter a phone number/email address  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■Selecting from Simple Input

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 17-21) and enter.

Select *Simple Input*→ ● → Select an entry → ●

Selecting an Address from the Sent/Received Log
Select Sent Log/Received Log→ → Select a log→ ●

■ Selecting an Address from a Group

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Group (page 17-21) and enter them.

Select  $Group \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

- **2** Select  $Subject \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter a subject \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select  $Text \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter a message \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - ■Inserting a Phone Number, etc.

Phone numbers, emoticons, and phrases can be inserted from Notepad, Signature, Phone Book, owner information, Sent log, etc. (page 3-13).

- 4 Attach files
  - For details on how to attach files, see page 17-7.
- **5** Press (Send)  $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bullet$

The message is sent.

 If you select Notify Only Once, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### Note

- When there is insufficient memory, you cannot create a message. Delete unnecessary messages in *Message Box* (page 17-17) or set Autodelete to *Set* (page 17-14).
- If the other party's handset doesn't support S! Mail, it might be displayed differently.

#### Tip

 By pressing and holding () ( ) in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create S! Mail by selecting a log and pressing (Mail).

### **Available Options When You Enter an Address**

An address can be added or deleted after you enter it. Also save it to Phone Book, change the address type, or set the category.

# 1 In the Create Message window, select the address field

### **Adding Recipients**

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \ Address \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an address  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

 For details on how to enter addresses, see "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" on page 17-4.

#### **■**Deleting One Recipient

Press  $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a recipient  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $One \rightarrow$ 

#### ■ Deleting All Recipients

Press (Menu)→**Delete** All→

### ■Deleting Multiple Recipients

### ■Storing a Recipient's Information in Phone Book

Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a recipient  $\rightarrow$   $\smile$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Save Sender  $\rightarrow$  Add New/Add  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

 See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.

### ■Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a recipient  $\rightarrow$   $\[ \text{We nu} \] \rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow To/Cc/Bcc \rightarrow To$ 

To: The recipient's address.

- Cc : Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses. Addresses entered in the Cc (carbon copy) field are also displayed to the other recipients.
- **Bcc**: Addresses entered in the **Bcc** (blind carbon copy) field are not displayed to the other recipients.

#### Registering All Addresses into a Group

Press  $\[ \]$  (Menu) $\to$ *To Group* $\to$  $\[ \]$  (twice) $\to$ Select a group $\to$  $\[ \]$  Enter a group name $\to$  $\[ \]$ 

### **Available Options When You Enter a Text**

Text can be edited or deleted after you enter it. Also insert a mail template or save entered text as a template.

# In the Create Message window, select the text

### **■**Editing the Text

Press  $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Edit the text  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

### ■Deleting the Text

Press 🖭 (Menu)→*Clear Field*→ •

### ■Switching the Text to Mail Template

 If you call up a template while creating a message, a confirmation window appears asking you whether you want to delete text and insert the template. The message you have created will be deleted if you select YES.

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Switch Templ.  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Switch  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Phone Memory/Memory Card  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a template  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Edit the text  $\bigcirc$ 

Saving the Entered Text as a Template

Press (Menu)→Save Template→ → → Edit a title→ → → Phone Memory/Memory Card → →

### **Decorating the Text**

This function allows you to make your message more visually appealing by changing the size and color of text, background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message. Also decorate the text easily using mail templates for creating messages.

**Decorate the text** 

■ Changing Font Color/Font Size

Select Font Color/Font Size → Select a color/size → ●

Enter a message

■Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging a Text
Select Blink/Telop/Swing→ → Enter a message

■Aligning a Text
Select *LineUp* → Select the position of the entered text → Enter a message

■Inserting a Line
Select Partition → ●

■Inserting an Image/Sound/My Pictograms item
Select Picture/Sound/MyPictograms → ● → Select an image/
sound/My Pictograms item → ●

■ Select the Background Color
Select ScreenColor → Select a color → ●

■Deleting Decorations Individually

**■**Deleting All Decorations

Select  $Cancel \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

- If you send a decorated message to a device (PC, for example) other than an HTML-enabled SoftBank handset, decorated parts may not be displayed properly.
- Animation files preinstalled in *Pictures* folder of Data Folder can be inserted when you select *Picture*. For the items which can be inserted, see Arrange-picture List (page 23-15).

### **Changing the Decorations**

By selecting a range of entered text, decorations such as color, size, flashing, telop, swing, and alignments can be set. Also change/reset the decorations.

Press (Range•Paste)→Start→ → Move the cursor to the last character of the text range → Arrange → ●

**3** Decorate the selected text

■ Deleting the Decorations of the Selected Text
Select Cancel → Select a decoration → (Delete)

#### **Using Mail Template**

Decorate the text easily by inserting the mail template.

2 Select a mail template → ● → Edit the text → ●

#### Tip

 When there is already text entered in the message, a confirmation window appears asking whether to insert the template and delete the entered text.

### **Attaching Files**

Attach an image or melody to an S! Mail.

1 In the Create Message window, select  $Files \rightarrow \bullet$ 

■Attaching a File Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card

Select Data Folder→ → Phone Memory/Memory Card → Select a file → ●

■ Taking a Picture to Attach
Select Take Picture → ● → Take a picture → ●

■ Recording a Video to Attach

Select Record Video → ● → Record a video → (Attach)

#### Note

 Some files may not be attached to a message depending on the type. To find out whether a certain file can be attached or not, see Details of the file (page 10-7).

#### Tip

- When selecting the file in a folder, select a folder and press
- While selecting the attached file, press (Menu) to perform the following:

Details/Delete

### **Feeling Setting**

A Feeling setting is a feature which can notify the recipient a new message with the emoticon.

In the Create Message window, select Feeling→
→ Select the Feeling icon→

#### Note

 When you send a message with an emoticon to a handset that doesn't support the Feeling setting, the emoticon is displayed as a regular pictograph on the subject field.

17

#### **Other Functions**

# 1 Open the Create Message window

Switching the Mail Type to SMS

Select  $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow SMS \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

 If a message contains something that cannot be sent using SMS, a confirmation window will appear. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select *Change*.

 If a message exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window will appear. By selecting *Cut to Fit* SMS, you can delete part of the message so it won't exceed the number of maximum characters.

■ Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) → Save to Drafts →  $\bigcirc$  → Save →  $\bigcirc$ 

■ Checking the Content Before Sending a Message
Press 🖫 or 🖂 (Menu)→ Preview → •

■ Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipient

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

■Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delivery \ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select the delivery time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow$ 

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on the Mail Server

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Expiry \ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select the expiry time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

Select *Options* → • → *Priority* → • → Select the priority → •

### ■Enabling/Disabling the Sender's Setting

● For details on how to set a sender's address, see page 17-22.

Select *Options* → *Reply to* → *Activate/Deactivate* →

■Deleting Checked Received Messages on the Sender's Side Automatically

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Self-delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

 If you change the message type from S! Mail to SMS, the following items are deleted.

Email address/Cc and Bcc setting/Subject/Attached file/Mail template and Arrange settings/Feeling setting

- If you haven't set the date or time on *Delivery Time*, messages are sent out immediately.
- S! Mail messages saved in the mail server are deleted automatically when the specified expiry time is reached.

# **Creating & Sending an SMS Message**

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets. Up to 70 characters (140 bytes) can be sent if they include double-byte and single-byte katakana or pictographs. If all the characters are single-byte alphanumerics or single-byte symbols, up to 160 characters can be sent.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Create Msg.

**1** Select  $Text \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter a message \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**2** Select  $Address \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter a phone number$ 

■Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select *Phone Book* $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ Select an entry $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$  $\rightarrow$ Select a phone number $\rightarrow$  $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Entering a Phone Number Directly

■Selecting from Simple Input

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 17-21) and enter them.

Select *Simple Input*→ ● → Select an entry → ●

■ Selecting a Phone Number from the Sent Log/Received Log

Select **Sent Log/Received Log**  $\rightarrow$  Select a log  $\rightarrow$ 

■Selecting Phone Numbers from a Group

 You can select from addresses that you have saved to a Group (page 17-21) and enter them.

Select  $Group \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

The message is sent.

 If you select Notify Only Once, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### Note

- When you send a message, transmission fees will be charged for every recipient entered in the address field.
- If Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-6) is set to ON and SMS Center Number ("+819066519300") and Address are not saved to Number List (page 13-6), you cannot send an SMS message.

- After Step 2, press (Menu) to perform the following:
   Preview/Save to Drafts/Add Address/Delete All/Save Sender/ To Group
- By pressing and holding in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create SMS by selecting a log and pressing
   (Mail).

#### **Other Functions**

When you send an SMS message, the following options are available. The options can be configured in advance (pages 17-21, 17-22).

- 1 Open the Create Message window
  - Switching the Mail Type to S! Mail Select  $Type \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow S! Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc$
  - Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on the Mail Server

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Expiry \ Time \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Select the expiry time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

■Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipient

Select  $Options \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow DeliveryCheck \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the message type will be reset to SMS automatically.
   Add email address/Set Cc/Bcc setting/Enter Subject/Attach file/Set Feeling setting
- By pressing (Menu) and selecting *Templates* or *Arrange* while entering text, a confirmation window will appear asking you whether you want to switch from SMS to S! Mail. If you want to switch to S! Mail, select *Change to S!Mail*. If you want to create a message as an SMS message, select *Cut to Fit SMS*. If you select *Edit Message*, you can go back to editing the message.

#### Tip

 Saved SMS messages are deleted when the specified expiry time is reached.

### **Drafts**

Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Main Messaging Create Msg.

- Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Save to Drafts $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Save $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

**Editing/Sending Draft Messages** 

Main Messaging Drafts

- Select a message→ → Select an item→ ●
- **2** Edit the selected item $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bigcirc$

- While selecting a message in the Drafts message list, press (Menu) to perform the following:
  - Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender/Export/ Sort by/Filter

# **Message Box**

Received and sent messages are saved to the *Received* and *Sent* message boxes respectively. Created messages that have not been sent are saved to the *Drafts* message box, and messages that have failed to be sent are saved to the *Unsent Msg.* message box.

- For details on an available amount of messages you can store, see "Storage Capacity" on page 23-16.
- When there are unread messages in Received, the "=" indicator appears.

### **Displaying Messages in the Message Box**

### **Message List Window**



Received Message List

- ①Message Status
- Unread Message with Attachment(s)
- Unread Message without Attachments
- Read Message with Attachment(s)
- Read Message without Attachments

- Unread S! Mail Notification
- Read S! Mail Notification
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
- Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
- Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
- Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
- Sent Message with Attachment(s)/No Delivery Confirmation
- Sent Message without Attachments/No Delivery Confirmation
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Delivery Failed
- i Unsent Message without Attachments/Delivery Failed
- Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Waiting Delivery
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Waiting Delivery
- ☐ Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Sending
  ☐
- Unsent Message without Attachments/Sending
- Draft with Attachment(s)
- Draft without Attachments
- (2)S! Mail/SMS
- St Mail
- SMS
- SMS on the USIM card
- ③Priority/Protection
- High/Protected
- A Normal/Protected
- Low/Protected
- High/Not Protected
- I ow/Not Protected

17

### **Setting Security for Message Box**

When Security Lock is set for Message Box, Security Code (page 1-20) entry is required to open Message Box.

Main Messaging

**1** Select Message Box→¬¬ (Menu)→Security Lock
→¬

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)

**3** Select  $Lock/Unlock \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**Checking the Contents of the Message** 

Main menu Messaging

**1** Select Message Box  $\rightarrow$  •

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)

**3** Select a folder→●→Select a message→●

# **Changing the Message Box List Display Mode**

#### Switching between Folder View and All Message View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between Folder View and All Message View.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

**1** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Display* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select Folder View→ → Folder View|All Messages → •

#### Switching between Mixed View and Separate View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between "Sent or Received" and "Sent and Received".

Main Messaging Message Box

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Display $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

2 Select Received/Sent→ → Mixed View|Separate View → •

Tip

### **Switching the Message List Display Mode**

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→
- **2** Press [m] (Menu) $\rightarrow Display \rightarrow \bullet$
- **3** Select Display Items → Subject|Addresses → •

Tip

You can also switch the message list display mode by pressing <a>S</a>.

# **Operations While Viewing Messages**

### **Copying Text**

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder → Open a message
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Text Copy* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- 3 Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range → Specify a range of text to copy → ●

### Moving SMS Messages to Your USIM Card or Handset

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→ → Open a message
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Move $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ To Folder/To USIM  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

### Displaying Details of a Message

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select a folder→ → Open a message
- **2** Press [w] (Menu) $\rightarrow View \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow View Details \rightarrow \bullet$

### **Managing Message Folders**

Use folders to organize and manage messages saved in Message Box.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

#### **■**Editing a Folder Name

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$  w (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Rename\ Folder \rightarrow$   $\textcircled{\bullet}$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a folder name  $\rightarrow$   $\textcircled{\bullet}$ 

- Sorting Messages to the Specified Folders Automatically
  Select the user folder, Ku-man folder or Idokoro folder → [№] (Menu) →
  Sort Setting → → Select the sort criteria → → Specify condition
  →
  - Select *Person* to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sort condition.
  - Select *Group* to set a group in Phone Book as the sort condition.
  - Select Address to set the specified addresses that are not saved to Phone Book as the sort condition.
  - Select *Phone Book* to set existence or non-existence in Phone Book as the sort condition.
  - Select Ku-man to set messages from Ku-man as the sort condition.
  - Select *Idokoro* to set Departure Mail, Arrival Mail, and Simple Notice as the sort condition.

#### **■**Deleting Messages Automatically

Select a folder  $\rightarrow$   $\[ \] \]$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Auto-delete \rightarrow$   $\[ \] \rightarrow$   $Received/Sent \rightarrow$   $\[ \] \rightarrow$   $Set/Do not Set \rightarrow$   $\[ \] \bigcirc$ 

### ■Setting Security for the Selected Folder

 You can set the handset so that it asks for the security code in order to view the messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to *General*.

Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Security Lock  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow$  Lock/Unlock  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- When Auto-delete is set to Do not Set and memory becomes full, you
  cannot send/receive a message. Delete the unnecessary messages (page
  17-17).
- When Auto-delete is set to Set and memory becomes full, the oldest message is deleted when a new message is received or created.

- If a received message meets more than one sorting criterion, the order
  of priority for sorting a message is *Idokoro* → *Person* → *Group* → *Address* → *Phone Book*,

### **Replying to Messages**

Quote sender's message when composing your reply.

For S! Mail, a replying message has Re: automatically inserted into the front of the subject.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

1 Select a folder→ → Open a message → (Reply)

■ Replying by Creating a New Message Select Blank → •

Select Blank

■ Replying by Quoting the Received Message Select With Text → •

■ Replying by Referring the Received Message Select  $Refer \rightarrow \bullet$ 

 To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select To Sender or To All.

#### Tip

- When you quote a received message decorated by Arrange settings and reply to the sender, an outgoing message that quotes the decorations is created.
- When you quote the text of a received message to compose a new message, the quoted text is not displayed if you decorate the message by Arrange settings.
- It's impossible to quote or refer to a received message in which Auto-delete is set and reply to the sender.

### **Forwarding Messages**

 For S! Mail, a forwarding message has Fw: automatically inserted into the front of the subject.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

**1** Select a folder→ • Open a message → w (Menu)

**2** Select *Divert*→

#### Tip

- When you forward a message with an attached file, the attached file is forwarded, too.
- When you forward a decorated message, the decorations will be forwarded, too.

# Making a Call to the Sender of the Message

The call can be made when the sender's address is a phone number.

Main menu Messaging Message Box Received

Select a folder→ ● → Open a message → 🗹 (Menu)

**2** Select Call Sender→ • → ✓

### **Checking Delivery Report**

Confirm the delivery status of messages by delivery report sent from the mail server when Delivery Check (page 17-22) is set to  $\mathbf{Ask}$ . View the delivery report in Information Prompt (page 1-9), too.

Main menu Messaging Message Box

- **1** Select *Sent*→Select a folder→
- 2 Select a message with the delivery confirmation icon ( ♣) → ●

#### **Linked Information**

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website from a linked phone number, email address, or URL within a received message.

 $\ensuremath{\bullet}$  The available linked information is displayed in blue characters.

Main Messaging Message Box

- Select a folder → → Select message including information → ●
- **2** Select the information→
  - Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number Select Voice Call→ → ✓
  - Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select  $Create \ Mail \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Create \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Create \ a \ message$ 

■Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select  $Save\ Sender 
ightarrow igotimes 
ightarrow Add\ New/Add 
ightarrow igotimes 
ightarrow Add\ a\ Phone Book\ entry$ 

- See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-2) about the following operations.
- Starting the Navi Application from Location Information Select Navi Appli  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Launch  $\rightarrow$
- Registering Selected Location Information to the My Locations

Select **To Locations**→

Connecting to the Selected URL

Select *Connect*→

### **Saving Attached Files**

Save a file attached to received message in Data Folder.

Main Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

- Select a folder→ → Open a message that has an attached file
- **2** Select an attached file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow Save \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - To display/play the attached file, select View or Play.
- 3 Enter a file name→ → Phone Memory|Memory Card → •

Some data may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

 When a received message has more than 20 attached files, all the files after the 20th file are not displayed/played.

### **Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages**

Main menu ► Messaging ► Unsent Msg.

**1** Select a message → ● → Select an item → ●

**2** Edit the item→

**3** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Send) $\rightarrow OK \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

 The only type of message that you can edit is a message that you have failed to send.

### **Protecting/Unprotecting Messages**

Protect messages against accidental deletion or Auto-delete (page 17-14).

Main menu Messaging Message Box

■Protecting/Unprotecting One Message

Select a message  $\rightarrow$   $(Menu) \rightarrow Protect \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Protect/Deactivate \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \rightarrow$ 

■Protecting/Unprotecting Multiple Messages

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Protect  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Protect  $\rightarrow$  Deactivate  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  Select messages  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

Protecting/Unprotecting All Messages in the Folder

# **Deleting Messages**

Main Messaging Message Box

**1** Select a folder→●

**■**Deleting One Message

Select a message  $\rightarrow$  P (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Deleting Multiple Messages

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  **Select Multi**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select messages  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  **YES**  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■Deleting All Messages in the Received/Sent Box

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  All $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Messaging

### **Received/Sent Messages Operations**

Main Messaging Message Box

■ Changing the Order that Messages Appear

Select a folder → 🍽 (Menu) → Sort by → 🍑 → Select the sort criteria → 🔎

■ Displaying Messages According to the Specified Criteria Select a folder  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Filter*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the criteria  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

■ Making a Call to the Sender/Receiver of a Message
Select a folder → Select a message → (Menu) → Call Sender/
Call Address → ○ → ✓

■Adding a New Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select a folder  $\longrightarrow$  Select a message  $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\longrightarrow$  Save Address  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  Phone Book  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  Add New  $\longrightarrow$  Enter items  $\longrightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (OK)

■Adding a Phone Number/Email Address to a Phone Book Entry

Select a folder  $\longrightarrow$  Select a message  $\longrightarrow$  (Menu)  $\longrightarrow$  Save  $Address \longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  Phone Book  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  Add  $\longrightarrow$  Select a Phone Book entry  $\longrightarrow$   $\longrightarrow$  (OK)

■Adding a Phone Number/Email Address to the Reject List

Select a folder → Select a message → (Menu) → Save Address

→ → Edit List → → Enter your security code (page 1-20) →

Add/Do not Add → (■)

#### Switching between Unread and Read

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box ► Received

**1** Select a folder→

**■**Changing One Message

Select a message  $\rightarrow \boxed{w}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Unread/Read \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \rightarrow One \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$  $\rightarrow To\ Unread/To\ Read \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ 

■ Changing Multiple Messages at Once

Press  $\[ \]$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  *Unread/Read* $\rightarrow$   $\[ \]$  $\rightarrow$  *Select Multi* $\rightarrow$   $\[ \]$  $\rightarrow$  *To Unread/To Read* $\rightarrow$   $\[ \]$  $\rightarrow$  Select messages $\rightarrow$   $\[ \]$  $\rightarrow$   $\[ \]$  $\[ \]$  (Change)

**■**Changing All Messages in the Folder

Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Unread/Read*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *All*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *To Unread/To Read*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Change*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

### **Moving Messages**

Main menu ► Messaging ► Message Box

**1** Select *Received*|*Sent*→Select a folder→ •

**■**Moving One Message

Select a message  $\rightarrow \boxed{w}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Move \ Folder \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet} \rightarrow One \rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$  $\rightarrow$  Select a folder  $\rightarrow \boxed{\bullet}$ 

**■**Moving Multiple Messages at Once

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$  Move Folder $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select messages $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Move) $\rightarrow$  Select a folder $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Moving All Messages in the Folder
Press  $\stackrel{\searrow}{}$  (Menu)→Move Folder→ $\bigcirc$ →All→ $\bigcirc$ →Select a folder  $\stackrel{\frown}{}$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Server Mail Operations**

### **Using the Mail List**

If an incoming message meets any of the following criteria, the message is stored on the mail server temporarily.

- When the other party's handset is turned off or out of the service area
- When an S! Mail exceeds 284 characters (284 bytes)
- When a file is attached
- When multiple addresses are specified
- When the subject contains 41 or more single-byte characters
- When the sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

# ■ Retrieving and Updating the Mail List

Press (Update)→Update → •

### **■**Retrieving Messages

### ■ Retrieving Multiple Messages at Once

#### Tip

 Retrieved messages are deleted from the Mail List and saved to Received.

### **Forwarding Server Messages**

Forward messages stored on the Mail Server to other handsets, PCs, etc.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

- **2** Select Keep/Do not  $Keep \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter a recipient
  - When Do not Keep is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the server.
  - For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.
- 3 Press 🖆 (Divert)

### **Deleting Server Messages**

Delete messages stored on the Mail Server.

### **Deleting One Message**

Main menu Messaging Server Mail

- Select a message  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  One
- Deleting a Message Stored on the Mail Server Select Server Mail → → YES → ●
- ■Deleting an S! Mail Notification and Message Stored on the Mail Server

Select *Notif./Server*  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

### **Deleting Multiple Messages**

Main menu Messaging Server Mail

- **1** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - Deleting Multiple Messages Stored on the Mail Server Select Server Mail → ●
  - Deleting Multiple S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Mail Server Select Notif./Server → ●
- **2** Select messages→●
- **3** Press @ (Delete)→*YES*→ ●

# Deleting All Messages

Main menu Messaging Server Mail

**1** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ All Read Mail|All $\rightarrow$ 

- Deleting All Messages Stored on the Mail Server Select Server Mail → •
- Deleting All S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Mail Server

  Select Notif:/Server→ •
- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$

### **Checking the Mail Server Status**

Check the usage rate of the Mail Server.

Main menu ► Messaging ► Server Mail

- **1** Press  $_{\mathbf{Y}}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ *Mailbox Vol.* $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 
  - To update the amount of mailbox space, press (Update).

#### Note

If the mail server usage exceeds 80%, a warning window will appear.
 Retrieve messages from the server (page 17-19) or delete them (page 17-19).

# Message Settings

### **Display Settings**

Main Messaging Settings Display

- ■Selecting a Message Font Size
- Select *Font Size*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the font size  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- Select the Scroll Unit of the Message Display Window
  Select Scrolling→ → Select the scroll unit→ ●
- Setting the Sender/Subject View for When You Receive a Message

Select *Show Address* → ● → Enter your security code (page 1-20) → *Main Display/Ext. Display* → ○ → Select a viewing mode → ●

### **Creating Settings**

### Creating the Simple Input List

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Creating

- 1 Select Simple Input→ → Select an unregistered list→ → Enter a recipient
  - For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.
- 2 Press (OK)

### **Setting Groups**

Send a message to multiple addresses by using the Group list.

### **■**Editing a Group Name

Select a group  $\rightarrow \begin{tabular}{l} \begin{tabula$ 

- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \bigcirc$  Enter a recipient
  - For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.
  - ■Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Select a recipient  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  To/Cc/Bcc  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  To/Cc/Bcc  $\rightarrow$ 

**3** Press 🗐 (OK)

### Saving/Inserting a Signature

Main Messaging ► Settings ► Creating

- **1** Select *Signature*→ •
- **2** Select Signature 1/Signature 2→ ●→Enter a signature → ●

Signature is saved and the feature is set.

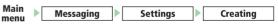
- ■Canceling Signature
  Select No Signature

  •
- Editing Signature

Select  $Signature\ 1/Signature\ 2 \rightarrow \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{l} \limits \end{tabular}} \ (Menu) \rightarrow Edit \rightarrow \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{l} \limits \end{tabular}} \rightarrow Edit$  signature  $\rightarrow$ 

### Setting the Default Mail Type

Set the type of an outgoing message (SMS/S! Mail) when you create a new message. The mail type can be changed when you create a message, too (pages 17-8, 17-10).



- Select Default Type→ → SMS/S! Mail→
  - Setting the Notification When the Mail Type is Switched Select  $Notify\ Type$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Show/Hide  $\bullet$

### **Sending Settings** Main Messaging Settinas Sendina menu ■ Setting the Transmission Confirmation Window Select Confirmation $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Show/Hide $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ ■ Setting the Vibrator When Transmission is Confirmed Select *Vibration* $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow ON/OFF \rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ ■Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients Select **DeliveryCheck** $\rightarrow \triangle$ **Select DeliveryCheck** $\rightarrow \triangle$ **Operator Operator Operat** Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on the Mail Server Select Expiry Time $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ SMS/S! Mail $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$ $\rightarrow$ Select the expiry time→ ■ Setting the Message Priority Level Select **Priority**→ • Select the priority → • ■ Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the **Service Center to Recipients** Select **Delivery Time** → Select the delivery time → ■ Saving an Address of a Sender Select $Reply to \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc \bigcirc$ Enter a recipient • For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4. **Receiving Settings**

#### Retrieve Mode (S! Mail)

Set whether to automatically retrieve messages received by the Mail Server.



# **1** Select *Retrieve Mode*→

### ■Home Network (Japan)

Select  $Home \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Immediate/Phone No. Only/Deferred \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

### ■Roaming (Abroad)

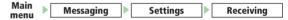
Select an S! Mail download method (automatic or manual) while roaming.

Select  $Roaming \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Immediate/Deferred \rightarrow \bullet$ 

 SMS reception may be subject to fees, depending on your price plan and conditions. Change settings accordingly.

### **Setting the Automatic Extraction of Attached Files**

Set whether to automatically display/play picture and sound files attached to messages.



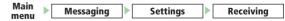
# **1** Select *Auto-extract*→

**■**Setting the Automatic Display of Picture Files Select *Picture* → → *Show/Hide* → ●

Setting the Automatic Display of Sound Files
Select Sound → ● → Unmute/Mute → ●

#### **Setting Address Filter**

Make a Reject list and reject messages from addresses you specify in the list.



- 1 Select *RejectMessage* → → Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- 2 Select Reject List  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  Set to Reject  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow ONI$
- 3 Select  $Edit\ List \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Add \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Enter an address
  - For details on how to enter addresses, see page 17-4.
- 4 Press (OK)

### **Rejecting Anonymous Messages**

Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

- 1 Select *RejectMessage* → ► Enter your security code (page 1-20) → *Anonymous* → ●
- **2** Select RejectlAccept→ •

### **Setting Spam Filtering**

Sort messages from telephone numbers or email addresses that are not saved in Phone Book to a specific folder.

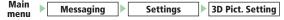
Main menu ► Messaging ► Settings ► Receiving

Select *RejectMessage* → ● → Enter your security code (page 1-20) → *Anti Spam* → ●

- **2** Select Sort Messages → Sort|Do not Sort → •
- **3** Select Select Folder  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bullet$

### **Setting 3D Pictogram Display**

3D Pictogram Display is a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in text. Set the display conditions, background color and display speed.



- Setting the Conditions for Displaying Received Messages with a 3D Pictogram Display
  - Select *Auto Play*  $\rightarrow$  Select the condition  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- Setting the Font and Background Colors for a 3D Pictogram Display
  Select Colors → → Select a color → ●

#### Note

- 3D Pictogram Display cannot display SMS messages with no body text and S! Mail notifications.
- Background playback of a music file may be paused if you use 3D Pictogram Display.

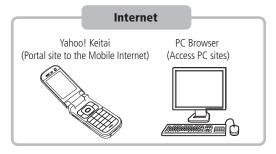
#### diT

- You can display up to 150 characters regardless of whether the characters are single byte or double byte. "..." indicates after the maximum number of characters has been exceeded.
- You can use or to change the display speed of 3D Pictogram Display while it is displayed/paused.

# **Getting Started**

### **About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website**

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Browser. In this manual, the Internet is used as a general term and the mobile portal site is referred to as Yahoo! Keitai. Websites accessed using PC Browser is referred to as a PC Website.



#### ■Using Yahoo! Keitai (page 18-3)

- Browse Mobile Internet sites
- Download images, music, etc.
- Stream movie/music files
- Register to Live Monitor

### ■Using PC Browser (page 18-4)

Browse Web pages designed for PCs

### **Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory**

Cache Memory temporarily stores websites you have retrieved.

When cache memory becomes full, the oldest information saved in the cache will be deleted automatically.

- Previous viewed pages may load from Cache Memory. To view the latest data, update the information (page 18-7).
- For details on storage capacity, see "Storage Capacity" on page 23-16.

- You can delete information that is temporarily saved in the cache (page 18-13).
- Some information cannot be saved in the cache.
- Information saved in the cache is not deleted when you disconnect from the Internet or turn off your handset.

#### SSL / TLS

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) are a communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates (page 18-10).

#### Caution about the Use of SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.

SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Betrusted Japan, Entrust Japan, GeoTrust Japan, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

# **Viewing and Using Websites**

### **Scrolling Pages**

When the whole page is not displayed on the browser screen, the scroll bar appears on the right or bottom of the screen. View the remaining part using  $\circlearrowleft$  or  $\bigodot$  to scroll the screen.

#### **Moving Cursor**

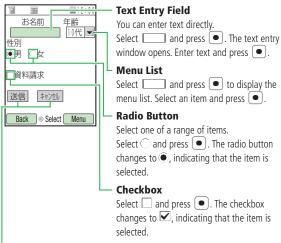
When there are items on the screen that can be selected, move the cursor to the next item by pressing  $\bigcirc$  and to the previous item by pressing  $\bigcirc$ .

### Going to the Next Page/Returning to the Previous Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press  $\widehat{\square}$  (Back) to return to the previous page. If you press  $\widehat{\square}$  (Menu) and select *Forward*, it takes you to the next page.

#### **Text Entry & Item Selection**

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



#### **Command Button**

Select operations such as sending or canceling what you put in the entry fields. Select and press • to execute the indicated command.

#### Note

• One on the left is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

# **Accessing Yahoo! Keitai**

Access Yahoo! Keitai to search for information. Also connect to a Website by entering an address (URL) like "http://www.△△.ne.jp" directly.

◆ The "♣" indicator appears during communication. To disconnect, press
 ★ (Cancel).



■ Accessing from the Yahoo! Web Menu Select Yahoo! Keitai → •

■Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address
Select Enter URL→ → Direct Input→ → Enter a URL→

(twice)

■Accessing a Web Page from URL History

Select  $Enter\ URL \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow URL\ History \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \triangle$  Select a URL history  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages

In History, up to the 20 most recently accessed URLs are saved. You can select a URL from History and access the same website again.

Select *History* → → Select a history → •

- Alternatively, you can press 🗹 in Standby to access Yahoo! Keitai.
- While a URL history is selected, press (Menu) and select *Delete* to delete the URL history.

# **Accessing PC Websites**

View websites designed for PCs with the PC Browser.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *PC Browser*→

• You can also access the PC Browser menu by pressing ( ).

■ Accessing the Home Page
Select *Homepage* → ●

■ Accessing Bookmarked Web Pages Select *Bookmarks* (page 18-5) → ( • )

■Accessing a Web Page from URL History
Select Enter URL → ● → URL History → ● → Select a URL history → ● (twice)

■Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages
Select *History* → Select a history → ●

**2** Select OK|Ask Once Only→

 If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

#### Note

 Some websites may not be displayed correctly or it may take time to open the site depending on the site.

# **Saved Pages**

If you save frequently accessed information to Saved Pages, the information can be called up without accessing the Internet later.

### Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Saved Pages  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**2** Select  $Save \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter a title \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Saved Pages, it is saved as a different page.

#### Tip

 URLs and attached data which include linked information are saved in Saved Pages.

Internet

### **Displaying Saved Pages**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select Saved Pages→●

**■** Displaying Saved Pages of PC Websites
Select PC Browser → → Saved Pages → ●

**2** Select the title of the page→●

### **Bookmarks**

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

### **Adding a Bookmark**

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Bookmarks  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select *Save*→
  - If you don't edit a title or URL, press (OK).
- 3 Select the title field  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Edit$  the title  $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Edit$  (OK)
  - Select a folder when adding to the folder.

### **Using Bookmarks**

Main Main Yahoo! Keitai

- **1** Select *Bookmarks*→
  - ■Using Bookmarks for PC Websites
    Select PC Browser→ → Bookmarks → ●
- **2** Select the title of the page→●

After communication with the Service Center, information is displayed.

Tip

You can call up information from Bookmarks while viewing a page.
 Display a page → ⟨¬¬¬ (Menu) → Bookmarks → (¬¬¬ View List

### **Editing Bookmarks**

Create folders to organize bookmarks, change bookmark titles or folder names, or delete them.

### **Creating a Folder**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

- **1** Select *Bookmarks*→
  - **■** Creating a Folder for a PC Website
    Select  $PC Browser \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Bookmarks \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Press  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Create Folder $\rightarrow$

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks*→

■ Editing a Bookmark Title of PC Website
Select PC Browser → ● → Bookmarks → ●

2 Select the title of the page→ (Menu)

**3** Select  $Edit \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select a title \rightarrow \bullet$ 

4 Edit the title→ ● → © (OK)

● To rename a folder, select a folder you want to rename from the Bookmarks list, press (Menu) and select *Rename Folder*.

Moving a Bookmark to Another Folder

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select *Bookmarks*  $\rightarrow$  **•** 

Moving a Bookmark of a PC Website Select PC Browser → Bookmarks →

2 Select the title of the page→¬¬ (Menu)→Move

**3** Select a folder  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Sending a URL in an SMS or S! Mail Message

Main Wahoo! Keitai

**Select** *Bookmarks*  $\rightarrow$  **Output** 

Sending the URL of a PC Website
Select PC Browser→ → Bookmarks→ ●

**2** Select the title of the page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Send  $URL|As\ Mail \rightarrow \bullet$ 

**Deleting Bookmarks** 

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**Select** *Bookmarks*  $\rightarrow$  **Output** 

■ Deleting Bookmarks of PC Websites
Select PC Browser→ ● → Bookmarks → ●

Select the title of the page→ $\bigcirc$  (Menu)→*Delete* 

■ Deleting One Bookmark
Select One → ● → YES → ●
■ Deleting All Bookmarks

Select  $All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

18

Internet

#### Tip

 To delete a folder, select a folder you want to delete from the Bookmarks list and select (Menu) → Delete Folder.

# **Setting Browser Security**

If you set browser security, your security code needs to be entered to display Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai

**1** Select Bookmarks|Saved Pages|Enter URL|History→

| \( \sum \) (Menu)

**■Setting Browser Security for a PC Website**Select *PC Browser* → → *Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Enter* 

URL/History→ (Menu)

- 2 Select Security Lock→ → Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **3** Select *Lock|Unlock*→●

# **Operations for Web Pages**

### Entering a URL Directly to Access a Website

While displaying pages, connect to a homepage by entering an address (URL) like "http://www. \alpha \c.o.jp " directly.

- Display a page  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Enter URL*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - To access a website from access history, select *URL History* (pages 18-3, 18-4).
- **2** Select  $Direct\ Input \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter\ a\ URL \rightarrow \bullet$  (twice)

### Switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Websites

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Change  $View \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select OK|Ask Once Only→
  - If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

### **Updating the Information**

Update the displayed page.

Display a page→☑ (Menu)→*Reload Page*→●

### **Using Linked Information**

Use linked phone numbers, email addresses or URLs to make calls, create messages or access websites. Also add phone numbers and email addresses to Phone Book.

- Available only when the phone number, email address or URL is underlined.
- **1** Display a page
  - ■Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked phone number  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Call/To Phone Book*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■Sending Message/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked email address→●→As Mail/To Phone Book
→●

■Accessing a Website

Select a linked URL→

# **Copying Text from a Page**

Copy text from a page to the clipboard.

**1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{Y}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Text\ Copy \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→ → Specify a range of text to copy

Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

### **Useful Features While Viewing a Page**

Searching for a Particular Character String on a Page

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bullet$
- **2** Select  $Search \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Enter text to search for \rightarrow \bullet$
- 3 Select the search method→ ●→Select the search condition→ ●→ (Search)

Jumping to the Top or End of Web Page

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select *To Top|To End*→

### Sending URLs via SMS/S! Mail

Display the Create Message window with the URL pasted to the text.

1 Display a page 
$$\rightarrow \bigcirc$$
 (Menu)  $\rightarrow$   $Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $Send$   $URL \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## Saving a Page to Event

Save a displayed page to events in the Calendar. A saved page is stored in Saved Pages.

- 2 Select To Event→ → Register the event (page 14-22)

## Saving a Page to My Locations

When a page with location information is displayed, the information can be saved to My Locations.

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select *To Locations*→

## **Viewing Properties of the Web Page**

Check a title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer or URL of the page.

- **2** Select *Page Details*→

### Displaying a Selected Frame in the Whole Screen

In a page that is designed for PCs and has multiple frames, a frame can be selected and maximize it to fit the whole screen.

- **1** Display a page→Select a frame
- - Returning to the All-Frames Screen

    Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Frame \ Out \rightarrow \bigcirc$

## Playing Flash®

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select Flash(R) Menu $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Play from Top/Play  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$

## Magnifying/Shrinking a Page

- Display a page of PC Website  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Tool \rightarrow$   $\longrightarrow Zoom \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Select Magnification/Shrinkage Percentage→●

## **Changing Display Mode**

Switch the display mode between normal and full scale on the PC Browser screen.

1 Display a page of a PC Website→ 🔀 (Menu)

**2** Select *PC Screen|Small Screen*→

## **Changing the Direction**

You can switch the direction to be displayed on a PC Website between horizontal and vertical.

1 Display a page of PC Website→ (Menu)→ Tool
→ •

**2** Select *LandscapelPortrait*→ •

## **Checking Server Certificates**

While viewing a page that supports SSL/TLS connections, the applied certificate can be viewed.

• For details on SSL/TLS, see page 18-2.

**1** Display a page which is protected by SSL/TLS→

[x] (Menu)→Tool→ • → Details → •

**2** Select Session Info.→

## **Using Files in Web Pages**

Perform various operations such as saving and displaying/playing picture and melody files in Web pages.

## Saving the File to Data Folder

1 Display a page that has a file→ w (Menu)

**2** Select Saving  $Mode \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bullet$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**3** Select Save → • Phone Memory Memory Card → •

■Saving a Pictograph File to My Pictograms in Data Folder on the handset

Select *Save My Pict.*→

#### Note

• Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

## **Viewing File Properties**

Display a page that has a file→ (Menu)

**2** Select Saving  $Mode \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

**3** Select *File Details* → •

Interne

## Playing or Displaying the File Data

- 1 Display a page that has a file→ w (Menu)
- **2** Select Saving  $Mode \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select a file  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **3** Select  $Play/View \rightarrow \bullet$

#### Note

• Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

## **Downloading Files from Links**

- 1 Display a page that has a file
- **2** Select a link→●

Downloading begins.

- Playing or Displaying the File Select *Play/View* →
- Saving the File to Data Folder
- Select *Save*→
- ■Viewing File Properties

Select *File Details*→

- Saving and Setting the File as a Wallpaper Select Settings → (twice)
- Saving and Setting the File as a Ringtone
  Select Save & Set→ → Ring Song · Tone/Music → → Voice
  Call/Video Call/Message/DeliveryCheck/Missed Call/Circle
  Talk/Hot Status → → (twice)

#### Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

#### Tip

- For details on streaming, see page 8-6.

## **Changing the Font Size of Text in Information**

Main Main Yahoo! Keitai Settings

**1** Select Font Size  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select the font size  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

Tip

## **Setting the Scroll Unit of Pages**

Main menu ► Yahoo! Keitai ► Settings

**1** Select  $Scrolling \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Select the scroll unit  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

Tir

## **Changing the Text Encoding Type**

When text is not correctly shown in the page, change the text encoding type to show them again.

- **1** Display a page  $\rightarrow \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Select  $Encoding\ Type \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select\ the\ text$  encoding type  $\rightarrow \bullet$

## Adjusting the Sound Volume

- 1 Display a page  $\rightarrow \searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Sound Volume  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$
- 2 Adjust the sound volume→●

## Refusing the Reception of Images or Melodies (Text Browse)

Set your handset to receive only text information from the Internet which will shorten the amount of time to complete a transmission.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings

- **1** Select *Downloads*  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 
  - Refusing the Reception of Images
    Select  $Images \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Do \ not \ Download \rightarrow \bigcirc$
  - Refusing the Reception of Melodies
    Select  $Sounds \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Do \ not \ Download \rightarrow \bigcirc$

18

Interne

## **Setting a Warning Window When Changing Browsers**

Set whether or not a warning window appears when you change between PC Browser and Yahoo! Keitai.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai PC Browser Settings

**2** Select *ShowlHide*→ •

## **Memory Management**

## **Clearing All Cache Memory**

Clear the temporarily saved information in Cache memory.

Main menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Settings ▶ Memory Mgr.

**1** Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$ Clear Cache  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### **Clearing All Cookie Information**

Main menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Settings ▶ Memory Mgr.

**1** Enter your security code (page 1-20)→*Clear Cookie*→ • → *YES*→ •

## Clearing the User Information for Authentication

Main menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Settings ▶ Memory Mgr.

1 Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$ Clear Auth... $\rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## **Security Settings**

## **Manufacture Number Setting**

Set whether to automatically send the International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) of your handset as your User ID when a request is received from the network

Select *Manufacture #→* ●

**2** Select SendlDo not Send→●

Internet

## **Referer Setting**

Set your handset whether or not a referer page (the previous page linked) will be let off when you move from one Web page to the next.

**Select** Send Referer→ →SendlDo not Send→ ●

## **Enabling/Disabling the Storing of Cookies**

Cookies are the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and other information. The information is sent from the server, saved temporarily in your handset and used for contents service. If Cookie is set to *Enable*, the information such as the date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site.

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings Security

**1** Select *Cookie*→

**2** Select *EnablelDisablelAlways Ask*→●

#### **Script Setting**

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when showing a Web page whose script has been set.

Main Main Yahoo! Keitai Settings Security

**1** Select Script → • → Ask when Connect|Disable| Always Ask → •

## **Confirming the Root Certificates**

Confirm details on a certificate issued from a certificate authority.

• For details on SSL/TLS, see page 18-2.

Main menu 

Yahoo! Keitai 

Settings 

Security

## **Authentication Setting**

Set whether to retain authentication information

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Settings Security

**1** Select Authentica...→ → Retain InfolPer Sessionl Do not Retain→ ●

## **Setting SSL Communication**

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when sending out encoded data by SSL communication.

Main Yahoo! Keitai menu

Settings Security

**Select** Session Info.  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Show|Hide $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

## Specifying the Destination to Save Downloaded Contents

Specify the destination to save contents such as music files when you download them from Web pages.

Main menu

Yahoo! Keitai Settinas

**Select**  $Storage \rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow Phone Memory|Memory|Card$ 

 To change the destination while viewing a page, press 
 \( \sigma \) (Menu) → **Settings**  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  **Storage** on the page.

## **Initializing Your Browser**

Return data, such as browser setting, Bookmarks, Saved Pages, access history, authentication information, cookie and cache, to the default settings.

Main Yahoo! Keitai **Settings** menu

- Select Browser Reset  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$

## Resetting Various Settings of the Browser

Return the browser's various settings to the default settings.

Main Yahoo! Keitai Settings menu

- Select Reset Setting  $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$

## **Live Monitor**

Confirm various pieces of the latest news delivered by information service providers and S! Loop (page 20-1) items in Active Window (pages 14-1, 14-3) by automatic updates recurring every period of time as you have specified.

## **Registering New Information to be Displayed**

Main menu Yahoo! Keitai Live Monitor

**1** Select List/S! Loop List  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Select Contents List/S! Loop  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

**3** Select contents→●

• Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

#### Tip

#### Update/Delete

 The items registered in S! Loop will be shown in the S! Loop list. For details, see the S! Loop Help.

## **Resetting the Registered List**

Delete all registered Live Monitor lists and S! Loop list (left).

Main menu 

Yahoo! Keitai 

Live Monitor 

Settings

- Select Clear List→ → Enter your security code (page 1-20)
- **2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$

# **Getting Started**

Download an S! Appli from Web pages providing S! Appli on the Internet. Downloading uses the same amount of communication charges as when you use the Internet

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

## About S! Appli

## ■Downloading S! Appli (page 19-2)

S! Appli such as games and 3D images downloaded from the Internet will be stored in the S! Appli Library.

## ■Network S! Appli (right)

You can enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network.

## ■ Setting Screensaver (page 19-5)

If you set an S! Appli as a Screensaver, you will be notified by animations and voices at the time of calls and messages coming in.

## About Network S! Appli

There are S! Appli which operate only on the handset at the time of use, and S! Appli (Network S! Appli) which need to connect to the network (Internet). Enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network for Network S! Appli.

- When you use a Network S! Appli, a communication fee is charged each time the application connects to a network.
- If you have previously set Access as Session in security settings (page 19-4) when you use Network S! Appli, a confirmation window will be displayed at the time of the first use, and then your handset will be automatically connected to the network thereafter.

# **Downloading S! Appli**

Main S! Appli Library

- 1 Select More S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$   $\rightarrow$  Select an S! Appli  $\rightarrow$  Download  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$
- **2** Select *Phone Memory Memory Card*→

  •

Downloading begins.

• A confirmation window is displayed when the download is completed. Select *Launch* or *Show* to either activate the S! Appli or display the S! Appli Library. If you select *Back to Browser*, the web page will reappear. If there is a certificate for an S! Appli, you can confirm it by selecting *Certify confirm*.

#### Note

- If the battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

#### Tip

- If there is an S! Appli being temporarily suspended at the beginning of downloading, a confirmation window making sure of completion will be displayed. If you want to continue downloading, select YES.
- If the memory of the destination to save the file is full or if the number of items to save is exceeded:
  - If the destination is your handset, a confirmation window is displayed. Select YES and then delete unnecessary data.
  - If the destination is a memory card, you cannot download S! Appli.
     Delete unnecessary files of S! Appli (page 19-3) or save them on the handset.

# **Starting S! Appli**

Main s! Appli Library

**1** Select an S! Appli→●

#### Tip

 Operations when there is a call or message coming in while you are running S! Appli, it will follow the priority settings for incoming calls and messages (page 19-5).

# Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

## Suspending/Resuming/Ending

- While an S! Appli is running, press
- **Select**  $Pause|Resume|End \rightarrow \bullet$

If you close your handset, the application pauses.

## Resuming/Ending S! Appli Suspended

Main S! Appli Library menu

**Select** Resume|Exit $\rightarrow$ 

# **S! Appli Library**

## Deleting S! Appli

Main S! Appli Library menu

■ Deleting One Application

Select an application  $\rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow One \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Deleting Multiple Applications

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Delete $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select 

■Deleting All Applications

Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Delete \rightarrow (\bullet) \rightarrow All \rightarrow (\bullet) \rightarrow Enter your security$ code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow$ **YES** $\rightarrow$ 

diT

• There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be deleted. This depends on the type of the preinstalled S! Appli.

## Switching the S! Appli Library Display

Change the S! Appli Library display from the handset (Data Folder) library to the memory card library. The " 50 " indicator appears while the memory card library is displayed.

Main S! Appli Library menu

Press 🖾 ( 互 )

• To change from the memory card to the handset, press ( ).

## **Viewing S! Appli Properties**

Main S! Appli Library

**1** Select an S! Appli→ (Menu)→Details → ●

Tip

 You can confirm such specific data as names, vendors, and versions of applications in properties. The items to be confirmed vary according to the S! Appli.

## Moving S! Appli

Move an S! Appli to the S! Appli Library on the handset (Data Folder) or to the S! Appli Library on the memory card.

Main 
S! Appli 
Library

■ Moving One Application

**■**Moving Multiple Applications

Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Move $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select Multi $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Select applications $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (Move) $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**■**Moving All Applications

Press  $(Menu) \rightarrow Move \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Enter your security code (page 1-20) \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

- Standby settings will be canceled if the S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to the memory card.
- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved anywhere
  according to the type of the preinstalled S! Appli. There are also some
  cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved to the memory card according
  to the type of the downloaded S! Appli.
- If there is the same S! Appli on the handset or on the memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

## **Security Settings**

Set your handset to alert you before making calls or network connection, etc., while an S! Appli is running.

Main S! Appli Library

**2** Select the function→

■Permit All Functions and Do Not Display Alert Select Blanket→ •

■ Display Alert Each Time You Access a Function Select Oneshot → ●

■Display Alert Each Time an S! Appli is Activated Select Session→

**DO Not Execute** Any Function and Do Not Display Alert Select  $No \rightarrow \bullet$ 

#### Tip

• The type of display methods varies according to the function.

# **S! Appli Settings**

## **Setting the Screensaver**

Set an S! Appli for Standby. Also set the starting time of the S! Appli set as the Screensaver.

Main s! Appli Settings

**1** Select *Screensaver*→

■ Setting an S! Appli as Screensaver

Select  $Screensavers \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$  Select an application  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES$ 

■Setting the S! Appli Start Time

Press  $\ _{\Sigma}$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Start Time $\rightarrow$   $\ _{\bullet}$   $\ _{\bullet}$ Enter a start time $\rightarrow$   $\ _{\bullet}$ 

#### Note

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answer Phone (page 14-16) will not start operating when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver or when the Voice Call of Calls&Alarms (right) is set as Continue Apps.
- According to the type of application, there are some cases when a Screensaver application may pause if the time specified for power saving (page 12-9) is over.

#### Tip

- If you press when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver, the S! Appli set as the Screensaver will pause, but its Standby setting will not be canceled. If you want to cancel the S! Appli set as the Screensaver, select OFF at Screensaver.
- You can also set the Standby settings if you select an S! Appli available as Screensaver in the S! Appli Library (page 19-3).

## Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli

Set whether to pause the S! Appli to put a priority on an incoming call or to have a notification only without interrupting the S! Appli, when you receive a call, etc. while operating the S! Appli.

Main s! Appli ► Settings

**1** Select *Calls&Alarms*→

- Select Voice Call → Pause Apps/Continue Apps → •
- Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Video Call Select Video Call → Pause Apps/Continue Apps → ●
- Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Message

Select  $Message \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Pause Apps/Continue Apps \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■ Setting the Priority for When the Alarm Plays Select  $Alarm \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Pause Apps/Continue Apps \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### Note

 Answer Phone (page 14-16) will not start operating when the Voice Call is set as Continue Apps. Main menu ► S! Appli ► Settings

**1** Select *Volume*→

**2** Adjust the volume→●

Tip

 If you have set the manner mode as Original Mode (page 12-1), the sound volume will follow the S! Appli volume set at the Original Mode.

## **Backlight Settings**

Main S! Appli Settings

**1** Select *Backlight* $\rightarrow$  •

■ Setting the Backlight to Display Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Always \ ON/Always \ OFF/Same \ as \ Phone \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Setting the Backlight to Blink Select  $Blink \rightarrow \bigcirc ON/OFF \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

Tip

 If you select Same as Phone, your handset will follow the backlight settings (page 12-9).

## **S! Appli Vibration**

Main menu ► S! Appli ► Settings

**1** Select *Vibration*→

**2** Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

# Updating the Information of an S! Appli on the Memory Card

You need to update the information of S! Appli on the memory card after you have used it (editing, adding, or deleting data) on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

Main menu ► S! Appli

**1** Select Card Sync $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$   $\rightarrow$  YES $\rightarrow$   $\bullet$ 

Tip

 There are some cases when it takes a certain amount of time to complete updates according to the numbers and sizes of the S! Appli.

19

# **Confirming the License Information of an S! Appli**

Main menu S! Appli

**1** Select *Information* → •

# **Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! Appli**

Main menu S! Appli

**1** Select *Certification* → Select the certification →

# **S! Town (Japanese Only)**

S! Town is an online communication application. S! Town is a 3D virtual space. Enjoy the S! Town virtual space e.g. when chatting or shopping.

- •S! Appli for S! Town is required to use S! Town. S! Appli *S! Town* is preinstalled in the handset.
- Preinstalled S! Appli S! Town cannot be deleted.
- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.

## **Using S! Town**

When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.

See S! Appli S! Town Help for details about using S! Town.

Main Communications

# **1** Select S! Town $\rightarrow$ •

- You can view the S! Town registration status and cancel the service from Yahoo! Keitai. See S! Appli S! Town Help for details.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.

## **Using the Library**

The library stores S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town. Downloaded S! Appli are automatically stored in the library.

S! Appli are not preinstalled in the library.

Main menu Communications

# Select S! Town→

You can start S! Appli from the library. Depending on the types of S! Appli, S! Appli S! Town may start.

# S! Loop (Japanese Only)

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

Main menu Communications

Select  $S! Loop \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

S! Loop top menu appears.

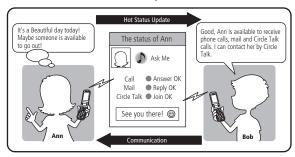
See S! Loop Help for operations.

## Hot Status 811T/813T

Share your current mood and availability to receive incoming calls, messages or Circle Talk calls with your Hot Status members.

It is necessary to obtain the person's consent before saving him/her to Hot Status Members List.

If you save your Hot Status members to the Members List of Active Window, their Hot Status information can be easily checked from Active Window.



#### Note

- If IP Service (page 13-4) is set to *OFF*, Hot Status is unavailable.
- Hot Status is not available during international roaming.

#### Tip

 Hot Status information is updated automatically. You can also update it manually (page 20-10).

## Subscription

 To use Hot Status, subscription is required and a monthly subscription fee is applied.

## **About Hot Status Notifications**

When a Hot Status notification arrives, the ring tone sounds and a message appears.

There are five types of Hot Status notifications as shown below.

There are nive types of flot status notifications as shown below.			
Туре	Description		
Saving Completed	Your invitation has been accepted. Once an invitation is accepted, the accepted parties can view each other's Hot Status information.		
Saving Failed	Your invitation was either rejected, the other party did not reply within 24 hours or his/her Members List already contained 30 people.		
Deletion Request	The other party has deleted you from his/her Hot Status Members List. After receiving this notification, you and the person can no longer check each other's Hot Status information.		
Saving Request	The other party has added you to his/her Hot Status Members List. After you accept the invitation, you and the person can check each other's Hot Status information.  When you receive a Saving Request, "ag" appears in Standby. The Saving Request is shown with "ag" in the Hot Status Notification List.		

Туре	Description		
Notification	The network connection failed and Hot Status has automatically become <i>Offline</i> .		

## **Checking Hot Status Notifications**

Hot Status notifications can be checked in the Hot Status Notification List.

# When Information Prompt appears, select Notification → Select the Hot Status notification → ●

 Select YES to display the Hot Status Members List after checking Saving Completed or Deletion Request notifications.

#### Tip

- Hot Status notifications are deleted from the Hot Status Notification List after you operate them.
- A message is displayed if you receive a Hot Status notification while operating in certain Hot Status windows. Select *Check Now* to display the Hot Status Notification List. To continue the current operation, select *Check Later*
- You can also display the Hot Status Notification List while the Hot Status Members List is displayed by pressing (Menu) and selecting Notification.
- Press (Menu) while the Hot Status Notification List is displayed to perform the following:

Delete/Delete All

## Creating a Hot Status Members List

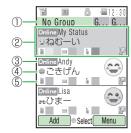
Save up to 30 people to your Hot Status Members List. Organize and manage entries by group. Save up to ten people per group or 30 people to  $\it No$   $\it Group$ .

#### Note

- You can only save people with Hot Status-enabled SoftBank handsets to the Hot Status Members List.
- To create a Hot Status Members List, set My Status to Online (page 20-7).

#### **Hot Status Members List Window**

The members saved to each group are shown in a list.



## ①Group tab

Switches the group to be displayed.

#### **2My Status**

Information about you. Always displayed on the top regardless of which group is displayed.

#### **3Hot Status connection status**

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

#### **4** Condition

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

#### **⑤** Answer status

Shows the reception conditions for various transmission methods in color.

Answer status for calls

Green: Answer OK Yellow: Urgent Red: Answer NG

White: Unknown

Answer status for mail

Green: Reply OK Yellow: Check Later Red: Unavailable

White: Unknown

Answer status for Circle Talk Green: Join OK/Auto Join White: Unknown

Red: Join NG/Unavailable

Tip

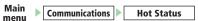
 Press (Menu) while the Hot Status Members List is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):

Add Members/Delete/Call/Call CT/To Phone Book/Settings/ Active Window/Notification/Rename/Change Group

## Saving Entries to Hot Status Members List

When you add a person to your Hot Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

 When the person accepts your invitation, a Saving Completed notification arrives (page 20-2) and that person is saved to Hot Status Members List where you can check the person's status.



- **1** Press (Add)  $\rightarrow$  Phone Book|Direct Input  $\rightarrow$ 
  - If you select *Phone Book*, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).
- **2** Select a person or enter a phone number→ ●
- **3** Select **1** → **•** → Select a group →

# **4** Press $\bigcirc$ (Save) $\rightarrow$ YES $\rightarrow$ $\bigcirc$

A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and *Waiting* is displayed in the Hot Status Members List.

#### Note

 A Saving Failed notification is sent when a person's Hot Status Members List already contains 30 people.

## Tip

- If My Status is Offline, a message asking you to go Online is displayed when you start up Hot Status. Select YES to change to Online.
- If you have not saved any members when you start up Hot Status, a
  message asking you if you want to add members is displayed. Select
  YES to add a new member.
- After you have selected a member, press (Menu) and select Change to select a different member.

## Saving an Entry to Hot Status Members List from a Saving Request

If you get an invitation to join a person's Hot Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification (page 20-2). If you accept, the other person is saved to the Hot Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's Hot Status information.

When Information Prompt appears, select *Notification*→•

# **2** Select the Saving Request notification $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES$



 If you select NO, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to the Hot Status Members List.

#### Note

- If you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to the Hot Status Members List for 24 hours.
- Although you select NO and a Saving Failed notification is returned to
  the other person, if the other person does not receive the notification
  because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than 24
  hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the
  person comes online.

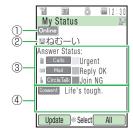
#### Tip

 You can set your handset to reject Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book or you can set it to reject all Saving Requests (page 20-9).

## **Editing Your Hot Status Information**

Open My Status window to edit your current mood or switch between online and offline.

## **My Status Window**



#### 1) Hot Status connection status

Set the connection to your network.

#### @Mood

Set your current feelings and condition.

#### **3** Answer status

Set your reception conditions for each of the various transmission methods.

#### (4)Comment

Enter a message to show to the other members.

## **Changing My Status**

Change your Hot Status information (My Status).

Main Communications Hot Status

# **1** Select My Status→●

● In Standby, press and hold 🗓 to display My Status.

## **■**To Change Your Mood

Select the mood→ ● → Select an item → ●

## **■**To Change Your Answer Status

Select the answer status to be changed  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an item  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## ■To Change All Your Answer Statuses

Press  $\[ \] \] \longrightarrow \text{Confirm the settings} \longrightarrow \[ \] \]$ 

• If you select *Customize*, press (Edit), change the setting name, set each of answer statuses, press (Save) and then press .

# **2** Press (Update)

#### **Entering Comments**

Enter a message to display as Hot Status information.



# **1** Select My Status→•

● In Standby, press and hold 🗓 to display My Status.

3 Enter a comment→ • → © (Update)

## **Switching between Online and Offline**

If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current condition. Also, you will not be able to create Hot Status Members List or talk to people with Circle Talk.

Main menu ► Communications ► Hot Status

- **1** Select My Status→●
  - In Standby, press and hold 🗓 to display My Status.
- 2 Select Online / Offline →
  - ■To Switch to Online

Select *Online*  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■To Switch to Offline

Select  $Offline \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc$  (Update)

## **Editing Hot Status Members List**

## **Editing a Group Name**

Main menu ► Communications ► Hot Status

- 1 Select a group with ••• → w (Menu)→Rename
  → •
- **2** Edit a group name→

Tip

• You cannot change the name of *No Group*.

## **Changing a Group**

Hot Status members can be moved to different groups.

- Select a group with 📀
  - To Change One Member

**■**To Select Multiple Members to Change

Select an entry other than My Status  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Change Group  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select some members  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Move)  $\rightarrow$  Select a group  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### ■To Change All Members

Select an entry other than My Status $\rightarrow \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{c} \end{tabular}} (Menu) \rightarrow Change Group \rightarrow \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{c} \end{tabular}} \rightarrow All \rightarrow \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{c} \end{tabular}} \rightarrow Select a group \rightarrow \textcircled{\begin{tabular}{c} \end{tabular}}$ 

#### Tip

 If you move multiple or all members to a group so that the group exceeds ten members, the group will not be changed and the screen returns to the multiple members selection window. Reselect the members so that the group does not exceed ten members.

#### **Deleting a Member**

When you delete a member from your Hot Status Members List, a Deletion Request notification is sent to that person.

Main menu Communications Hot Status

#### ■To Delete One Member

Select a group with  $\bullet \circ \to \mathsf{Select}$  a member  $\to \mathsf{Ver}$  (Menu)  $\to \mathsf{Delete} \to \mathsf{One} \to \mathsf{One} \to \mathsf{One} \to \mathsf{Ver} \to \mathsf{One}$ 

#### To Select Multiple Members to Delete

Select an entry other than My Status  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Delete  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select Multi  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select some members  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$  (Delete)  $\rightarrow$  Enter your security code (page 1-20)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

#### ■To Delete All Members

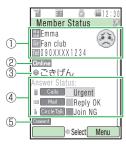
#### Note

 After a member is deleted from the Hot Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours.

## **Checking Members' Hot Status Information**

In the Member Status window, check the current condition of members and call them, send them messages or talk to them with Circle Talk.

#### **Member Status Window**



#### 1) Member information

Shows the name and image saved to Phone Book, Hot Status group and phone number.

#### **2 Hot Status connection status**

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

#### (3)Mood

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

#### (4) Answer status

Shows the reception conditions for various transmission methods in color.

#### **(5)Comment**

Shows a message from the member.

- **1** Select a group with ••• → Select a member → •
- 2 Contact the member according to their current status
  - ■To Make a Call

Select the answer status for Calls  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  *Voice Call/Video Call* $\rightarrow$ 

■To Send a Message

Select the answer status for Mail→ → Create a message → (Send)

■To Make a Circle Talk Call

Select the answer status for Circle Talk→

■

Tip

- When signal reception is poor, the latest Hot Status information may not be displayed. In this case, update the information manually (page 20-10).
- If a Hot Status member added by direct input of phone number is also saved to Phone Book, the member's name and image saved in Phone Book will be displayed if you update the Hot Status information manually (page 20-10).
- If you perform Reset All or Clear Memory (page 13-5), the names and images of members will no longer be displayed and they will all belong to No Group.
- Press (Menu) while the Member Status window is displayed to perform the following:

Edit/Change Group

#### Saving Entries to the Active Window Members List

Save members whose condition you often check to the Active Window Members List (page 14-1).

Main menu Communications Hot Status

- **1** Select a group with ••• → Select a member
- **Press**  $\bigcirc$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Active Window $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (twice) $\rightarrow$ Not Registered $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$

Tip

You can also display My Status in Active Window.

## **Hot Status Settings**

# Setting How to Respond to Saving Requests

You can set in advance how to respond when you receive Saving Request notifications.

The response types are shown below.

Response type	Description	
Always Answer	All Saving Requests are accepted.	
Known Only	Only Saving Requests from people saved in Phone Book are accepted. A Saving Failed notification is sent to Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book.	
Do not Answer	A Saving Failed notification is sent to all Saving Requests.	

1 Press  $\searrow$  (Menu)  $\rightarrow$  Settings  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Request Reply

**2** Select a response type→

## **Editing Your Mood and Setting All Answer Statuses**

Edit the mood to be displayed in My Status. Also, your answer statuses can be set all at once.

The following items are set when you purchase your handset.

© ごきげん	⊕ ハッピー	ひまー	
(Good mood)	(Happy)	(Free)	
るそぼー (Let's have fun)	おばつ     (Oh no!)	がっくり (Disappointed)	
⊛ うえーん	⊛ ાડે\અાડે\અ	めらめら	
(Weeping)	(Upset)	(Flaming)	
こうだる―い	aむーい	連絡して	
(Lazy)	(Sleepy)	(Contact me)	
♪ 誘って (Ask me)	₩ ひみつ (Secret)	? Optional (two)	

Main Communications Hot Status

1 Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Status Setting  $\rightarrow$ 

**2** Select an item→ (Change)

To Set an Icon

Select  $Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select an icon  $\rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

■To Set a Label

Select  $Label \rightarrow \blacksquare$   $\blacksquare$  Enter a label  $\rightarrow \blacksquare$ 

■To Set All Answer Statuses

Select  $Set All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Select an item \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

If you select Customize, the user settings you changed with w (All) in the My Status window (page 20-6) are applied.

**3** Press (Save)  $\rightarrow$  YES  $\rightarrow$  ( $\bullet$ )

## **Updating Hot Status Information Manually**

Hot Status Information is updated automatically, but you can also update it manually.

Main menu ► Communications ► Hot Status

**1** Press  $\searrow$  (Menu) $\rightarrow$ Settings $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$ Status Update  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

# **Using S! GPS Navi**

## About S! GPS Navi

S! GPS Navi uses location information by GPS satellite and by communication with base stations. View on the map where you are, and send your location information to compatible SoftBank handsets. Also retrieve information about your current location, and check the route to your destination. The navigation application is preinstalled in your handset. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

#### Note

- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, your position can be determined by the base station information. However, depending on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you
  can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- You cannot confirm the location during the time of Positioning Lock (page 21-4).

## **Starting a Navigation Application**

Use a navigation application to retrieve information about your current location or check the route to your destination.

Main Mavi

**1** Select *Navi Appli*→

#### Note

• End all paused S! Appli before activating a navigation application.

## **Checking Your Current Position**

Display the current location by starting the Navi Application.

Main menu Navi

# Select Locate $Me \rightarrow \bullet$

● A confirmation window is displayed as to whether to send out the location information. If you select *Ask Once Only*, there is no confirmation window showing up next time.

#### Note

 When the sending location setting (page 21-4) is set to *Do not Send*, the current position cannot be checked. Set to *Always Ask* or *Send*.

#### Tip

 Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.

## Sending Current Position by S! Mail

Main menu Navi

**1** Select *Location Mail*→

When your current position is obtained, the Create Message window appears and the information is automatically inserted in the S! Mail text field

## **Using Location Logs**

Check location logs for up to the last 20 retrieved location information items. If "#" is shown to the left of location history, it means the right location was successfully confirmed; "#" means a failure.

Main menu Navi

**1** Select *Location Logs* → ● → Select a log → | ¬ (Menu)

■ Checking the Map from Location Information
Select *Open Map* → Send/Ask Once Only → Start the navigation application and display the map

- •If you select Ask Once Only, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.
- Starting the Navigation Application
  Select Go to → Start the navigation application
- Sending the Location Information by S! Mail
  Select *Location Mail* → Create Message window
  - See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 17-4) about the following operations.

- Saving the Location Information to My Locations
  Select To Locations → ●
- Saving Location Information to a Phone Book Entry Select *To Phone Book* → 

  Select *To Phone Book*
- Deleting One Log
  Select  $Delete \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$
- Deleting All Logs
  Select  $Delete \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Delete \ All \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow$ Enter your security code (page 1-20) $\rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

## **Displaying the Log Details**

Main Navi

**1** Select *Location Logs*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  Select a log  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

## Tip

- When there are 20 location logs, the oldest log is deleted each time a new log is created.
- The location log is not saved to memory if positioning is stopped partway through.

## **Saving Location Information to My Locations**

Retrieve location information and save it to My Locations.



- **1** Select *My Locations* → Select an unregistered item → •
- 2 Save the location information → → Enter a title → ●

#### Tip

 When the location information is saved, select My Locations and press (Menu) to perform the following:

Open Map/Go to/Location Mail/To Phone Book/Update/Delete/ Edit Title

# **Settings**

# **Setting Quick GPS**

In Quick GPS, your handset maintains network connections, allowing quicker access to location information. The "\*" indicator appears while you are using Quick GPS.

- **1** Select *Quick GPS* $\rightarrow$  •
- **2** Select a time  $\rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

#### Note

 Communication fees apply for using Quick GPS because your handset connects to the Web during use.

#### Tip

 The indicator changes to "of "(grey) when your handset is unable to retrieve location information because, for example, it is out of service area.

## Saving a Map URL

Set the map provider to show a map on the Internet.



**1** Select NAVI Settings → → Map URL Settings → •

## ■Saving a Map URL

## ■Editing the Name of Map URL

## **■**Editing the Map URL

Select a map  $URL \rightarrow v$  (Menu) $\rightarrow Edit URL \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bullet$  $\rightarrow Edit the URL \rightarrow \bullet$ 

# ■Setting a Map URL

Select a map URL→

Deleting a Map URL

## Select a map URL $\rightarrow$ $\$ (Menu) $\rightarrow$ $Delete \rightarrow$ $\bullet$ $)<math>\rightarrow$ $YES \rightarrow$ $\bullet$ )

#### Note

• The preset map URL cannot be edited or deleted.

## **Selecting the Navigation Application**

Select a navigation application.

Main menu Navi

**1** Select NAVI Settings→ ● → Set Navi Appli→ ●

**2** Select a navigation application→

#### Note

 When application becomes unavailable due to USIM replacement, reset handset (Reset All) or clear entries/files (Clear Memory) (page13-5).

## **Positioning Lock**

Disable positioning.

Main menu Navi

**1** Select *NAVI Settings*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Positioning Lock*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 

**2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)

3 Select  $ON/OFF \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## **Privacy Settings**

Set how to notify when you receive positioning request made from handsets and PCs.

Main menu Navi

Select NAVI Settings  $\rightarrow \bullet$   $\rightarrow$  Privacy Settings  $\rightarrow \bullet$ 

• For the following procedure, follow the onscreen instructions.

## **Location Information Send Settings**

Set whether location information is sent automatically when a location information request is received while you are obtaining information.

Main menu Navi

Select NAVI Settings→ → LocationProperty→ → → → →

- **2** Enter your security code (page 1-20)
  - Displaying a Confirmation Window Every Time Select Always Ask → •
  - Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

    Select Send→ ●
  - ■Not Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select **Do not Send**→

# **S! Cast (Japanese Only)**

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night. When updates are received, Information Prompt (page 1-9) appears and the following indicators appear:

- Downloading content
- New S! Cast content
- Mark Download failed
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service. No additional fees are required for receiving content.
- •S! Cast is only available in Japan.

## Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Connect your handset to a special site to register or cancel transmission information and select programs.

•Communication fees apply while you are connected to the Web.



Follow the onscreen instructions.

## **Checking Content Updates**

Confirm the latest information.

The *What's new?* icon shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be "\( \mathbb{P}\) when it has not been read; "\( \mathbb{P}\) when it has been read.



**1** Select What's new?→●

Tip

 While What's new? is selected, press (Menu) and select Delete to delete the latest information

## **Checking Content from Information Prompt**

The latest information can be browsed from Information Prompt (page 1-9).

**1** When Information Prompt appears, select New  $CAST \rightarrow \bullet$ 

Tip

While browsing information, press (Menu) to perform the following:
 Forward/Text Copy/Saving Mode/Tool/Yahoo! Keitai/Settings

## **Downloading Content Manually**

When an update cannot be received because your handset is turned off or the signal is weak, manually download the update. Only updates for that day can be downloaded.

Main menu Entertainment CAST

**1** Select  $Get Latest \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 

• A connection is established to the redelivery page.

Note

Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.

## **Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt**

Establish a connection to the re-delivery page from Information Prompt (page 1-9).

**1** When Information Prompt appears, select *CAST* Info.→●

**2** Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$ 

## **Checking History**

Past updates are saved to History.

The icon *History* shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be " $\mathcal{A}$ " when there is some information that has not been read; " $\mathcal{A}$ " when all has been read.

Up to seven items are saved to History. The oldest item is deleted automatically.

Main menu Entertainment CAST

**1** Select *History*→

**2** Select a content→

Tip

- While History is selected, press (Menu) and select *Delete* to delete the old information.
- Up to 3 MB of content including the latest item can be saved. When
  either the maximum number of content items or the maximum content
  size is reached, the oldest item is deleted each time there is a new item.
- You cannot reorganize the list.

## **Weather Indicator**

Weather Indicator shows the weather forecast in the current area with indicators in Active Window (page 14-1). Weather Indicator is updated automatically.

A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

#### **Setting Weather Indicator**

- **1** Select Weather  $Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow View \ Setting \rightarrow \bigcirc$
- **2** Select Display  $Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Show \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES \rightarrow \bigcirc$

## Setting Information Prompt for Weather Indicator

Set to display Weather Indicator from Information Prompt (page 1-9).

- **2** Select  $Show \rightarrow \bullet$

Tip

• Use the Weather Indicator only as a guide.

## **Checking Weather Forecast**



- **1** Select Weather  $Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Weather \rightarrow \bigcirc$ 
  - ●When there is an unread forecast update, " " appears.

Tip

 You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator and pressing in Active Window.

## **Updating Weather Forecast**

Obtain the latest information manually when a Weather Indicator cannot be updated automatically.



Select Weather 
$$Icon \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow Update \rightarrow \bigcirc \rightarrow YES$$

## **Comic Surfing**

Comic Surfing is a viewer application to view electronic comic books and electronic photo albums (CCF files) saved in **Books** in Data Folder.

Enlarge or reduce the size of images, scroll screens with simple operation, and use sound and vibration effects for realistic presentation.

- You need to obtain a content key to view CCF files.
- Comic Surfing is an S! Appli.

## **Reading Electronic Comic Books**



# **1** Select *Comic Surfing*→

Comic Surfing is running

See Comic Surfing Help about the following operations.

#### Note

 When you change your handset, you can transfer the CCF files by using the memory card. You can view the files by downloading a content key again. Some CCF files, however, need to be downloaded again.

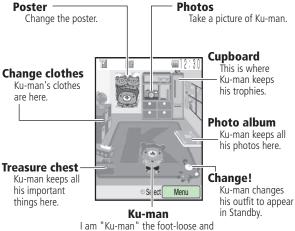
# **Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)**

"Ku-man" is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. Visit Ku-man's room to change his outfit or receive messages from him.

#### Note

 You cannot visit Ku-man's room if the language setting is set to English. Set the language to 日本語 (Japanese).

## About Ku-man's Room



fancy free star bear. Sometimes I like to travel around.

© Dora communications

Tip

• Check Ku-man's secrets at the website Toshiba User Club Site (right).

## **Opening Ku-man's Room**

Main menu

**Entertainment** 

## **1** Select Ku-man's $Room \rightarrow \bullet$

- When the confirmation window asking whether to open the room appears, select 起動する (Open).
- When the Idle Screen (page 12-8) setting confirmation window appears, select YES or NO.

#### Tip

 Press the ☑ (メニュー (Menu)) in Ku-man's room to perform the following:

模様がえ (Redecorate): Redecorate Ku-man's room. Select the room from お部屋データ (Room Data) in Ku-man Data.

く一まルメール (Ku-man Mail): Check messages from Ku-man (page 22-7).

**くーまんデータ** (Ku-man Data): Display or delete files from Ku-man Data or attach files to messages.

マイデータ登録 (My Info.): Set your name and Ku-man will remember it. Also set your birthday or anniversaries and Ku-man will celebrate with you.

UserClubSite: Download items for playing with Ku-man from the website Toshiba User Club Site.

ヘルプ (Help): Find out about the operations in Ku-man's room.

メモリ容量確認 (Memory Status): Check the amount of memory used in Ku-man Data.

 You can only download items for playing with Ku-man when *UserClubSite* (above) is selected.

#### Tip

- If Ku-man items become full, select the photos in the album that you
  want to keep, press 
   \( \subseteq \subseteq \sup \) (X=\sup (Menu)) and copy them to Data
  Folder or to the memory card before erasing the items from Ku-man
  Data.
- Ku-man sometimes goes off on journeys. You cannot meet him while he
  is on a trip, but he can send you mail. He will come back after a while,
  so visit his room from time to time to see if he is home.

## Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby (page 12-8) or take photos.

Example: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

- 1 In Ku-man's Room, press Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.
- **2** Press ② (前へ (Previous))/ ☆ (次へ (Next)) to select へんし~ん! (Change!)→ ●
- **3** Select an outfit→
  - Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

#### Tip

- If you select たからばこ (Treasure Chest), you can see Ku-man's treasures. Select a treasure, and press 🕞 (メニュー (Menu)) and select メール送信 (Send Mail) to attach the treasure to a message. The treasure disappears from the Treasure Chest when it is attached to a message.
- Select きかえ (Change Clothes) to change Ku-man's clothes. Ku-man has different clothes for day wear and evening wear, so he only wears new clothes for that part of the day (day or evening).
   For example, if Ku-man changes to clothes B during the day, then he can only wear clothes B during the day. For the evening he changes to clothes C. Then, if he changes from clothes C to clothes D during the night, the next day he wears clothes B during the day and clothes D for the evening.

Example	Day	Night
Clothes on a day	Wears clothes A	Wears clothes C
Change to clothes B while wearing clothes A during the day.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes C
Then, change to clothes D while wearing clothes C during the night.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D
On the next day	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D

Ku-man also changes clothes for the different seasons.

### **Checking Messages from Ku-man**

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times. Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man.

- **1** In Ku-man's Room, press (メニュー (Menu))→ くーまんメール (Ku-man Mail)→ ●
- **2** Select a message→●

Tip

- To stop Ku-man from sending you mail, press 🕞 (メニュー (Menu)) and select <ーまんのFF (Ku-man OFF) in Ku-man's Room.
- Check, save and delete messages from Ku-man in the same way as in the Message Box (page 17-11).
- Ku-man Mail uses the same memory as Received (page 17-11) in Message Box. If you delete all the received messages, or if you set Autodelete (page 17-14) setting to Set and the folder becomes full, messages from Ku-man are also deleted.
- You can save the attached data to Data Folder or to Ku-man Data.
- Ku-man Mail is mock mail that does not go through the service center.
   No communication charge is applied.
- You can also check Ku-man Mail as follows:
   Main menu → Messaging → Message Box → Received



# **Default Settings**

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
S! Appli	Settings	Screensaver: OFF, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Backlight (Backlight: Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON	Chapter 19
Active Window	Settings	Templates: Status/News, Auto Update (Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual), Idle Screen (Idle Display: Show, Image Setting: Show), Unread/Read: Show All, Screen Speed: Neutral	Page 14-4
Browser Se	ettings	Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scrolling: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Security (Manufacture #: Do not Send, Send Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask when Connect, Authentica: Per Session, Session Info.: Show), Storage: Phone Memory	Page 18-12
Camera	Camera	Picture Size (Mobile: W240×H320, Digital: W2048×H1536), Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, Icons Display: Show, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Mode: Mobile, Self-view: OFF, Night Mode: OFF, Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure: ±0.0EV	Chapter 7
	Video	Quality: (Video: Normal, Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)), Effects: OFF, Start/End: Pattern 1, ScreenDisplay: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, Preview: ON, File Name: Date&Time, Storage: Phone Memory, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Mode: Video Mail, Self-view: OFF, Voice Record: ON, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure: ±0.0EV, Encode: MPEG4	Chapter 7
	Scan Data	Exposure: ±0.0EV	Page 7-11

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	Display	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scrolling: Line, Show Address: Show All	Page 17-20
	Creating	Simple Input: No Entry, Category: No Entry, Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show	Page 17-21
	Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry Time: Maximum, Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF	Page 17-22
Messaging	Receiving	Retrieve Mode (Home: Phone No. Only *1, Roaming: Deferred), Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Reject List (Set to Reject: OFF, Edit List: Not Registered), Anonymous: Reject, Anti Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17)	Page 17-22
	3D Pict. Setting	Auto Play: Unread Only *2, Colors: Color 1	Page 17-23
	Received	Auto-delete: Do not Set	Page 17-14
	Sent	Auto-delete: Set	1 rage 17-14
Entertainment	Weather Icon	View Setting (Display Icon: Show, Information: Show)	Page 22-3
	Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View, My Info. (Name: No Entry, Birthday: No Entry, Anniversary: No Entry)	Page 22-4

 $<sup>^{\</sup>star 1}$  "Immediate" for the 813T

<sup>\*2 &</sup>quot;OFF" for the 813T

Fu	nction Name	Default Setting	Page
	Alarms	Alarms: OFF, Alarm Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF	Page 14-14
	<b>Answer Phone</b>	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 6 sec	Page 14-16
	Notepad	_	Page 14-17
	Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	Page 14-17
	Dictionary	_	Page 14-18
	Calendar	All View: Not Registered, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Calendar Lock: Unlock	Page 14-19
Tools	Tasks	All View: Not Completed, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Tasks Lock: Unlock	Page 14-27
	Time Table	Time Table: No Entry, Set Time: Unset	Page 14-31
	Kitchen Timer	_	Page 14-32
	Voice Recorder	Select Storage: Phone Memory	Page 14-33
	<b>World Clock</b>	_	Page 14-34
	Idokoro Mail	Recipients List: No Entry, Areas List: No Entry	Chapter 15
	Transfer All	_	Page 14-36
	Relocate	_	Page 14-39
	Update	_	Page 23-12

Fund	tion Name	Default Setting	Page
Data Folder	•	View Type: Thumbnail 3×3	Chapter 10
Media Play	er	Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat	Chapter 8
S! GPS Navi	i	Quick GPS: OFF, Map URL Settings: NAVITIME(http://map.navitime.jp/), Set Navi Appli: NAVITIME, Positioning Lock: OFF	Chapter 21
Phone Book		My Details: Owner phone number only, Speed Calling: Unset, Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock, Search Mode: List View, S! Addr. Book (User ID: No Entry, Password: No Entry, Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Normal Sync)	Chapter 4
Sounds	Normal	Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Ringtone: Pattern 1, Duration: 5 sec, Feeling: ON, Vibration: OFF, Keypad Tone Volume: Level 1, Keypad Tone Type: Original 1, Sound Effects Tone Volume: Level 1, Sound Effects Tone Type: Original, Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON	
	Manner Mode (Silent)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: Same as Phone, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answer Phone: Same as Phone	Chapter 12
	Manner Mode (Alarms)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Phone, Vibration: Same as Phone), Feeling: Same as Phone, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answer Phone: Same as Phone	
	Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms: OFF, Feeling: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Ans. Phone: ON	
Manner Mo	de	Silent	Page 12-1

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	Idle Screen	Wallpaper: Normal, Others: 1-line Digit, Ext. Display: Normal	
	Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Normal, Deco (Windows): Normal, In-Calls: Normal, Messages: Normal, Download: Normal, Power On: Normal, Power Off: Normal	
	<b>Caller Details</b>	Picture: ON, Ext. Display: ON	
Display	Font Settings	Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 1	
	Backlight	Power Saving: 1 min, Keypad Light: ON, Displays (Lighting Time: 15 sec, Brightness: Bright), Media Player: Always ON	Chapter 12
	External Light	Notification (Missed Call: Color 1, Messages: Color 2, DeliveryCheck: Color 3, Missed Call: Color 4, Missed CT: Color 6, Hot Status: Color 5), Incoming (Voice Call: Color 1, Video Call: Color 2, Message (Pattern: Color 3, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Color 4, Missed Call: Color 5, Circle Talk: Color 6, Hot Status: Color 5)	
	Operator Name	OFF	
Phone Settings	Clock	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)	Pages 12-7,14-34
	Sub Menu View	Show	Page 12-11
	言語選択	日本語	Page 12-10
	Navigation Keys	ै: Active Window, ♀: Phone Book, ∙○: Dialed Numbers, ○: Received Calls	Page 12 11
	Side Key	SimpleNotice	Page 12-11

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
	PIN1 Setting	_	
	Change PIN1	_	Dono 13 1
	Change PIN2	_	- Page 13-1
	Change Password	9999	
	Password Look	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF	Page 13-2
Security	Secret Mode	Hide	Page 13-3
	Reject Message	Reject List (Set to Reject: OFF, Edit List: Unset), Anonymous: Reject, Anti Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17)	Page 17-22
	Restricted Mode	Fixed Dial # (Number List: Unset), Web: OFF	Page 13-6
	IP Service	ON	Page 13-4
Call Settings	Call Services	Intl. Calls (Operator: Automatic, SelectNetwork: 3G)	Pages 2-11, 2-12
	Call Time&Cost	Time: 000:00:00, All Calls: 000:00:00, Cost: ——円, All Calls: —, Cost Unit (Unit: —, Rate: —), Cost Display: OFF, Cost Limit: —	Pages 2-8, 2-9
	Earphone	Auto Answer: OFF, Earphone Call: OFF	Page 14-44
	Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF	Page 12-12
	Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer (Auto Answer: OFF, Answer List: Unset), Self-view: ON	Chapter 5

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
. "	Reject Calls	Specific #s (Specific #s: OFF, Reject List: No Entry), Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF	Page 12-12
Call Settings	Offline Mode	OFF	Page 2-11
(Continued)	Show My Number	OFF	Page 12-13
	External Device	Empty	Page 12-14
Compositivity	Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF	Page 11-2
Connectivity	USB	Confirmation: Display, Battery: ON	Pages 11-6, 11-7
Ku-man	Idle Screen	OFF	Page 12-8
Priority		Mid-operation (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Video (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Media Player: Pause, Voice Recorder (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), S! Appli (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Circle Talk: Continue	Page 12-14
	Memory Status	_	Page 12-14
Memory	Format Card	_	Page 9-3
	Call Diverting	_	Page 16-2
Call Services	Voicemail	_	Page 16-3
	Call Waiting	_	Page 16-4
	Multiparty Call	_	Page 16-5
	Call Barring	_	Page 16-6

Func	tion Name	Default Setting	Page
	Dialed Number	_	
	Received Call	_	
Call Log	Dialed Circle Talk	_	Pages 2-6, 2-7
	Received Circle Talk	_	
Text Entry		Predict Text: ON, Input Method: Standard, Font Size: Medium-Small, Clipboard: Unset	Chapter 3
Shortcuts		Create Message, Message Box, Main Menu, Media Player, Calendar, Time Table, Calculator	Page 14-41
Press and hold 9*	Hold	Unset	Page 13-5
Press and hold # A/S	Manner Mode	Unset	Page 2-10

<sup>\*</sup> This operation is for when your handset is closed.

# Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	<ul><li>Is the battery pack inserted properly (page 1-12)?</li><li>Is the battery charged (page 1-10)?</li></ul>
Displays Please check connection with your charger. and cannot charge the battery.	Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the AC charger, handset or battery pack? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	<ul> <li>Does the PIN1 Entry window appear? PIN1 Setting (page 13-1) is set to Activate. Enter your PIN1 code.</li> <li>Does the "↑" indicator or Password Lock appear on the display? The password lock (page 13-2) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-20).</li> <li>Does USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM. appear on the display? The USIM card was not read properly. Turn the power off and make sure the USIM card is inserted properly (page 1-2).</li> </ul>
Cannot establish a connection for voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	<ul> <li>Does the " ™ indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset.</li> <li>Does the " ™ indicator appear on the display? Are you using the handset overseas? To use the handset overseas, you need to change the Select Network and Operator settings (pages 2-11, 2-12).</li> <li>Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-5) of your handset?</li> <li>Does the " ™ indicator or Offline Mode appear on the display? Cancel offline mode (page 2-11).</li> </ul>

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot make voice and video calls.	<ul> <li>Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code?</li> <li>Does Network busy. appear on the display?</li> <li>Is Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-6) set?</li> <li>Is Call Barring (page 16-6) set?</li> </ul>
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	<ul> <li>Is Reject Calls (page 12-12) set?</li> <li>Is Call Diverting (page 16-2) or Voicemail (page 16-3) set to <i>All Calls</i>?</li> <li>Is Call Barring (page 16-6) set?</li> </ul>
Cannot send messages.	<ul><li>Is Fixed Dialing Number (page 13-6) set?</li><li>Is Call Barring (page 16-6) set?</li></ul>
Cannot receive messages.	• Is Reject Message (page 17-22) set? • Is Call Barring (page 16-6) set?
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	<ul> <li>Does the " " indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset.</li> <li>Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-5) of your handset?</li> </ul>
The handset does not respond to key presses.	<ul> <li>Does the "↑" indicator or <i>Password Lock</i> appear on the display? The phone lock (page 13-2) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-20).</li> <li>Was your handset closed and the "♠" indicator displayed on the external display? The hold is activated (page 13-5). Press and hold while your handset is closed.</li> </ul>

# **Updating Software**

Check if software on the handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- No communication charge applies to update software.
- There are two ways to update software: Update now and Schedule update.

**Update now**: Update software now.

**Schedule update**: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the time you have specified.

- Software updates may take a long time.
- Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery pack while updating.
- Please update software in a place where the handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
- You cannot use other functions during updates. If a program is running, software update is not available.
- You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved in the handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if the handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.

### Note

 If the software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

### **Updating Software**

Main menu Tools Update

- Select  $YES \rightarrow \bullet$
- 2 Select Agree→ (twice)→Enter your center access code (page 1-20)→ (OK)
  - The check result is displayed.
  - ■Updating Software Immediately
    Select *Update now*→ → Press when the download is completed
    - A message appears to indicate that the download is completed.
    - When software is updated, the handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.



### ■ Selecting the Date and Time to Update Software

Select  $Schedule\ update \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow \bigcirc (YES) \rightarrow Select\ a\ date \rightarrow \bullet \rightarrow Select\ time \rightarrow \bullet (twice)$ 

• If a date or time you want to specify is not on the screen, select

### Next Time Slot or Next Week.

A confirmation window for software updates appears on the scheduled time. Press or leave the handset for about 10 seconds to start automatic software updates.

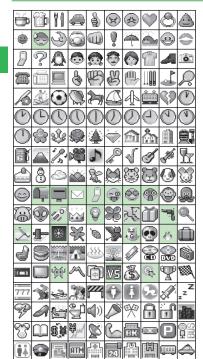


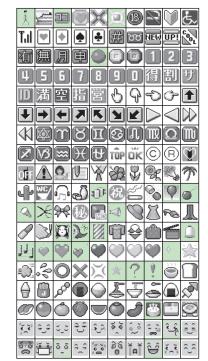
#### Note

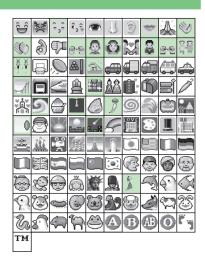
- If you are using another function on the handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If the handset indicates that it is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

### Tip

● To cancel the reservation for updating software, perform the following. Main menu  $\rightarrow$  *Tools*  $\rightarrow$  *Update*  $\rightarrow$  *YES*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\rightarrow$  *Agree*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$  (twice)  $\rightarrow$  Enter your center access code  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (YES)  $\rightarrow$  *Cancel schedule*  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$   $\bigcirc$  (YES)  $\rightarrow$   $\bigcirc$ 







- Pictographs in are animated.
- Pictographs do not appear in email or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

# **Arrange-picture List**

Following images are preinstalled. Insert images in S! Mail text messages (page17-6).

キラキラライン	(+*, +;+ +*+,++;++;++)
星空	
おめでとう	かかでとうで
ありがとう	THANG YOU
ごめんね	ごめんな
好き	CF.
ぶんぶん	(sn)
つかれた	ಷ್

やったー!	*
がんばれ!	<u></u>
OK	*
びっくり	Ą
くーまんライン1	<b>49.9.49.49.4</b>
くーまんライン2	** * * * * * *
く一まんダンス	000900

## Data Folder

Data Folder	Up to 10 MB*
-------------	--------------

<sup>\*</sup> The S! Appli Library shares its memory with Data Folder.

### Mail

Received	Up to 3.75 MB Up to 1,500 messages
Sent, Unsent Msg.	Up to 0.75 MB Up to 300 messages
Drafts	Up to 700 KB Up to 60 messages

### Internet

Cache	Up to 300 KB
Bookmarks	Up to 50 bookmarks
History (URL)	Up to 10 URLs

# **Main Specifications**

		810T/811T/813T		
	3G/UMTS 2100	1920 - 2170 MHz		
Frequency Range	GSM 900	880 - 960 MHz		
	DCS 1800	1710 - 1880 MHz		
	PCS 1900	1850 - 1990 MHz		
	Within 3G/UMTS area	Approx. 190 min.		
Continuous Talk Time	Video call Approx. 100 min.			
	Within GSM area	Approx. 320 min.		
Continuous Standby	Within 3G/UMTS area	Approx. 470 hrs		
Time	Within GSM area	Approx. 290 hrs		
Charging Time		Approx. 120 min.		
Dimensions when closed (W×H×D)		Approx. 49 × 97 × 20 mm		
	3G/UMTS 2100	Class 3 0.25 W		
Maximum Output	GSM 900	Class 4 2 W		
	DCS 1800	Class 1 1 W		
	PCS 1900	Class 1 1 W		
<b>Weight</b> 810T/811T: Approx. 111 g; 813T: Approx. 113 g		810T/811T: Approx. 111 g; 813T: Approx. 113 g		

- The values above were calculated with the battery pack attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery pack is attached.

- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery pack is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less. This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.). The value for continuous standby time is when the international calls setting was set to 3G.
- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if the handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in Standby when it is outside the service area. Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time. If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery pack.
- If the mobile light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a flashlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with the main display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the LCD display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

### **AC Charger**

Input Voltage: 100 to 240 V AC

: 50/60 Hz

Charging Temperature Range: 5 to 35°C

# Glossary

Term	Definition
3G/UMTS	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system. UMTS is the 3G mobile communication system of Europe.
GSM	A wireless system for digital handsets. GSM is the predominant system in Europe and Asia, and is the world's most widely used system.
GPRS	A data transmission technique used for GSM mobile phone networks. It enables the high-speed transfer of data in the form of packets.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Contacts list entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using the USIM card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.

# Index

2	3	3

Font, Background Colors	17-23
A	
AC Charger	1-12
Access Functions	
Accessories	
Account Name	
Active Window	
Change Icons	
Contact Members	
Hot Status Information	
Live Monitor	
Members List	14-2
Open	
Settings	
Weather Information	
After Sales Service	23-30
Alarms	
Alarm Tone	
Set	
Snooze	

Numeric 3D Pictogram Display.....17-23 Auto Play ......17-23

Stop	
Answer Calls	
Answer Phone	14-16
Delete	2-4, 14-16
Play	
Record	2-4
Ringing Duration Setting	
Set	14-16
Answer Video Calls	5-2
Any Key Answer	12-12
Attached Files	
Attach Files	
Automatic Extraction	17-22
Save Attached Files	17-16
Auto Answer	
Auto-delete Setting	
<b>Automatic Extraction</b>	17-22
Automatic Retrieve	17-22
В	
Backlight	12-9
Adjust Brightness	
Lighting Time	
Battery Alarm	
Battery Level	
Battery Pack	
Insert/Remove	
Bookmarks	

Cache	18-1, 18-13
Calculator	14-17
Exchange Rate	14-18
Tax Rate	14-17
Calendar	14-19
Add	14-22

Alarm	14-23	Finder Window	7-1	Video Modes	7-8, 7-10
Calendar Lock	14-26	Frame	7-8, 7-20	Video Quality	7-14
Delete	14-25	Full Screen Display	7-14	Videos	7-8
Edit	14-24	Grid	7-13	Voice Record	7-10
Holiday Setting	14-26	Icons Display	7-16	White Balance	7-16
Stop Alarm	14-25	Indicators	7-2	Zoom	7-4
Call Barring	16-6	Key Guide Display	7-4	Center Access Code	1-20
Call Barring Service Code	1-20, 16-7	Key Shortcut		Certificates	18-10, 18-14
Call Costs		Mobile Camera		Change Email Address	17-1
Cost Limit Setting	2-9	Mobile Light	7-4	Charger	
Currency Setting		Multi Shots	7-7	Charging	1-10
Call Diverting	16-2	Mute	7-18	AC Charger	1-12
Call Log		Night Mode	7-7	Desktop Cradle	1-13
Call Time		Picture Modes	7-5, 7-7	In-Car Charger	1-13
Call Waiting	16-4	Picture Quality	7-13	Charging Time	
Caller ID	16-1	Picture Size	7-13, 7-19	Circle Talk	6-1
Caller ID Setting	12-13	Pictures	7-5	Answer Circle Talk Calls	6-3
Camera	7-1	Preview Setting	7-15	Create an Entry	6-4
Add to Phone Book	7-10	Preview Window	7-1	Delete Members	6-6
Close-up Switch	7-4	Self-view mode	7-4	Dialed Numbers	2-6
Color Control	7-16	Send Functions	7-19	Earpiece Volume	6-3
Date Stamp	7-13	Set Pictures	7-6	Edit Group Member	6-5
Delay Timer	7-15	Short Video	7-8, 7-10	Edit Group Name	6-5
Digital Camera	7-5, 7-7	Shutter Sound	7-13	Make Circle Talk Calls	6-2
Edit Pictures	7-19	Start & End Sounds	7-14	Members List	6-4
Effects	7-16	Storage Place Setting	7-15	Received Calls	2-7
Encode	7-11	Take/Record		Switch Sound Output	
Exposure Control	7-4	Video Camera	7-8, 7-10	Clear Memory	13-5
File Name Setting	7 17	Video Mail	7 9 7 10	Clock Display	12.5

Customer Service	23-31
Cursor	1-18
To/Cc/Bcc	17-5
Text	17-4
Subject	17-4
Recipient	17-4
Options	. 17-8, 17-10
Mail Template	
Insert Signature	17-21
Font Size	
Decorate	
Attach Files	17-7
Create/Send Messages	
Converter	
Continuous Talk Time	
S! Town  Continuous Standby Time	
S! Loop	
Hot Status	
Communications	
Comic Surfing	
Security Code	
Internet Security Code	1-20
Center Access Code	1-20
Call Barring Service Code	1-20
Codes	
Wallpaper & Clock Setting	
Switch 12hour/24hour Clock	12-7

_	
Data Folder Data Management	10-1
Book Files	10-5
Change Folder/File Name	
Change Order	
Сору	
Delete	
Edit Files/Folders	10-10
File Properties	
Files for Gamendeco	10-6
Flash® Files	
List View	
Melody Files	10-4, 10-8
Memory Status	
Move	
Music Files	10-4
Open	10-3
Picture Files	10-3, 10-8
S! Appli	10-2
Slide Show	
Structure of Data Folder	10-1
Templates	10-6
Text Files	10-7
Thumbnail View	10-7
Video Files	10-5, 10-8
vObjects	10-6, 10-9
Date & Time	1-15

Default Settings	23-2
Delete Messages	
Auto-delete Setting	17-14
Delete All Messages	
Delete Multiple Messages	17-17
Delete One Message	17-17
Delivery Check	
Delivery Report	17-16
Delivery Time	17-22
Desktop Cradle	
Dialed Numbers	2-6
Dial-up Connections	
B1 (1	
Dictionary	
Display Power Saving	
Display Power Saving Download	8-6, 10-3, 19-2
Display Power Saving Download Drafts	8-6, 10-3, 19-2 17-10
Display Power Saving Download Drafts Edit	<b>B-6, 10-3, 19-2</b> <b>17-10</b> 17-10
Display Power Saving Download Drafts Edit Save	<b>8-6, 10-3, 19-2</b> <b>17-10</b> 17-10
Display Power Saving Download Drafts Edit	<b>8-6, 10-3, 19-2</b> <b>17-10</b> 17-10
Display Power Saving Download Drafts Edit Save	<b>8-6, 10-3, 19-2</b> <b>17-10</b> 17-10
Display Power Saving Download Drafts Edit Save	<b>8-6, 10-3, 19-2</b> <b>17-10</b> 17-10
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send	<b>3-6, 10-3, 19-2</b> 17-1017-1017-10
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send  E  Earpiece Volume2-5,	3-6, 10-3, 19-2 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send  E  Earpiece Volume	3-6, 10-3, 19-2 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send  E  Earpiece Volume	3-6, 10-3, 19-2 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send  E  Earpiece Volume	3-6, 10-3, 19-2 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-10 17-19 7-20 7-21
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send  E  Earpiece Volume	3-6, 10-3, 19-2 
Display Power Saving  Download  Edit  Save  Send  E  Earpiece Volume	3-6, 10-3, 19-2 

Overlay	7-22
Rotate	
dit Text	
Clipboard 3-1	2, 3-15
Convert All	3-14
Copy/Cut/Paste	3-12
Delete	3-15
Edit	3-12
Font Size	3-15
Input Method	3-15
Insert	3-13
Quote Information	3-13
Replace Text	3-15
Reset Prediction Dictionary	3-15
Save to Notepad	3-14
Save to Phone Book	3-14
Select Range	3-14
Undo	
Word Predictions	3-15
moticons	
nter Characters	
Address Library	
Alphanumerics	3-7
Beeper Mode	
Convert to Alphanumerics/Katakana	3-6
Convert to Kanji	
Custom Window	3-16
Dakuten and Handakuten	3-4
Display in Opposite Order	3-6

Emoticons	3-7, 3-16
Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana	3-3
Line Break	
Lower Case	
Phonetic Conversion	3-5
Pictographs	3-7
Space	3-8
Special Characters	
Symbols	
External Device Settings	
External Display	
Incoming Call Screen	
Wallpaper & Clock Setting	
External Light	
Notification	
Set Incoming External Light	

F	
Fixed Dialing Number	13-6
Folder Management	
Add	10-10
Delete	10-10
Folder Security	10-13
Rename	10-10
Font Size	12-8
Browser	18-12
SMS/S! Mail	17-20
Text Entry Window	3-15

Forward Message	17-15
G	
Glossary	23-19
Н	
Handsfree Operation	2-6
Handstrap Hole	
Hold	
Hot Status	
Hot Status Members List	
Member Status Window	
My Status	
Settings	20-9
1	
Idokoro Mail	15-1
Areas List	15-2
Notification Mail	15-3
Recipients List	15-1
In-Car Charger	
Incoming Call Screen	12-7
Indicators	
Camera	7-2

Dialed Numbers......2-6
External Display.....1-8

Hot Status	20-4
Main Display	1-6
Media Player	
Message	17-11
Received Calls	2-7
Text Entry	
Video	
Video Call	
Information Prompt	
Infrared Communication	
Authentication Password	
Dial-up Connections	
Receiving All	
Receiving Data	
Sending All	
Sending Data	
International Call Service	
Add Country Code List	
Add International Code and Country	
Change International Code	
International Roaming	
Make International Calls	
Operator	
Select Network	
Internet	
Linked Information	18-8
PC Website Browser	18-4
View/Use Websites	18-2
Internet Access	

IP Service Setting	13-4
K	
Key Assignment Keypad Lock Kitchen Timer Ku-man's Room Check Messages Open Play Set for Standby	13-4 22-4 22-7 22-5 22-6
L  Language  License Information	12-10 19-7
M	
Mail List  Delete Retrieve/Update  Mail Server  Delete Server Messages Mail Server Status Retrieve  Mail Server Status	
Mail Template	17-7

Vlail Туре	17-21
Main Display	1-6
Main Menu	
Main Specifications	23-17
Make Calls	2-1
Make Calls from Overseas	2-13
Make International Calls	2-1
Vlake Video Calls	5-1
Wanner Mode	2-10, 12-1
Manner Mode Settings	12-1
Alarms	12-1
Original	12-1, 12-2
Silent	12-1
Vlanufacture Number Sett	ing18-13
Media Player	
Background Playback	8-9
Delete	8-5
Download	
Equalizer	8-8
Full Screen	
Hide Icons	
Music Player	
Mute	
Play	
Play Modes	8-7
Playlists	
Priority	
Recent	
Search Time	8-8

Send	8-8
Streaming	8-6
Surround	8-8
View Property	8-2, 8-9
Voice Cancel	8-8
Memory Card	9-1
Backup	14-36
File Management	9-2
Format (Initialize)	9-3
Insert/Remove	9-1
Memory Status	9-3
Memory Management	18-13
Clear Authentication	18-13
Clear Cache	18-13
Clear Cookie	18-13
Cookie	18-14
Memory Status	12-14
Message Box	17-11
Change Order	17-18
Drafts	17-11
Manage Folders	17-14
Received	17-11
Rename Folder	17-14
Sent	17-11
Switch Unread/Read	17-18
Unsent Msg	17-11
Message List Window	17-11
Message Settings	17-20
Creating Settings	17-21

Display Settings	17-20
Receiving Settings	
Sending Settings	
Лessaging	
MobileRUPO	3-9
Multiparty Call	16-5
Multiple Connections	
· Music Player	
Activate	
End	8-10
Menu	
Operations during Playback	
Play	
Лutе́	
My Details	

N	
Navigation Key Navigation Key Setting	
Navigation Keys	12-1
Side Key	12-1
Network Settings	12-14
Retrieve Network Information	12-14
New Messages	17-2
Notepad	
Number Memo	
View Number Memo	14-34

0	
Offline Mode	2-11
Open to Talk	12-12
Operations for Web Pages	18-7
Access by Entering URL	18-7
Certificates	
Change Text Encoding Type	18-12
Change View	18-7
Playing Flash <sup>®</sup>	18-9
Save to Event	18-9
Save to My Locations	18-9
Send URLs via Messages	
Sound Volume	18-12
Text Copy	18-8
Update	
Use Files	18-10
View Property	
Operations While Viewing Messages	
Move	
Text Copy	
Operator Name Display	
Optional Accessories	
Optional Services	
Original Main Menu	
Original Manner Mode1	
Owner Information	4-10

Parts & Functions	
Password Lock	
Pause	•
Phone Book	
Call Log	
Change View	
Copy/Move	
Delete	
Edit	
External Light	4-:
Group Setting	
Location Information	
Memory Status	
Owner Information	
Picture	
Prohibit	
Ringtone Pattern	
Ringtone Volume	
S! Address Book	
Save	
Search Modes	
Secret Setting	
Select Storage	4-1
Setting Groups	
Sort	
Speed Calling	
Vibration	4-2

0	
Protect Messages	
Priority Setting	
Priority	
Phrase Prediction Word Predictions	
Conversion Prediction	
Predictions	
Power On/Off	
Play	
Edit	
Delete	8-5
Create	
Playlists	
USIM Lock	
Set	
PUK Codes PUK/PUK2	
PIN2	
PIN1	,
PIN Lock	
Change	
PINs	
Pictograph List	23-14
Pictographs	
vObjects	10-9

QR Code ......7-11

Scan	7-11
	R
Receive Messages	
Check New Messages.	17-2
Check Received Messa	ges17-3
	ges 17-3, 17-19
Retrieve Mail	17-3
Received Calls	2-7
Received Messages	
Add to Phone Book	17-18
Attached Files	17-16
Auto-delete	17-14
Change Order	17-18
Check	17-2, 17-11
Edit Folder Name	17-14
Forward	17-15
Move	17-18
Protect	17-17
Reply	17-15
Sort Setting	17-14
Switch Unread/Read	17-18
Reject Anonymous N	lessages17-23
	2-5
Reject List	12-13, 17-22
Ādd	12-13, 17-22
Setting	12-12, 17-22

Check ......7-12

Rename Folder	.10-10, 17-14	Resume	19-3	Location Information	21-1
Reset	13-5	Route Certificate	19-7	Location Mail	21-2
Reset All	13-5	S! Appli Library Display	19-3	Location Property	21-4
<b>Reset Confirmation Window</b>	v13-5	Security Settings	19-4	Map URL Settings	21-3
Reset Setting	13-5	Start	19-2	My Locations	21-3
Restricted Mode	13-6	Suspend	19-3	Positioning Lock	21-4
Add	13-6	S! Appli Library	19-3	Privacy Settings	21-4
Setting	13-6	S! Appli Screensaver	19-5	Quick GPS	21-3
<b>Retrieve Network Information</b>	1-15, 12-14	Setting	19-5	Select Navigation Application	21-4
Ringing Duration	12-3	Start Time	19-5	Start Navigation Application	
Ringtone	12-3	S! Appli Settings	19-5	S! Loop	20-1
Ringtone Volume		Backlight		S! Mail	
Roaming	2-11	Memory Card Sync	19-6	Create/Send	17-4
Make International Calls		Priority	19-5	Decorate Text	17-6
Operator	2-11	Screensaver	19-1, 19-5	Retrieve	17-2
Select Network	2-12	Vibration	19-6	S! Mail notification	17-3, 17-19
Root Certificates	18-14	Volume	19-6	S! Mail Settings	17-20
		S! Cast	22-1	Address Filtering	17-22
S		Cast Information	22-2	Auto-extract	17-22
3		Check	22-1, 22-2	Delivery Check	17-22
S! Address Book	4-12	Delete	22-1, 22-2	Delivery Time	17-22
S! Appli	19-1	Download Manually	22-2	Expiry Time	17-22
Delete	19-3	Get Latest	22-2	Group Setting	17-21
Download	19-2	History	22-2	Mail Type	17-21
End	19-3	Latest Information	22-1	Priority	17-22
License Information		New S! Cast	22-1	Reject Anonymous Messages	17-23
Move	19-4	Subscribe/Cancel Subscription.	22-1	Retrieve Mode	
Network S! Appli	19-1	S! GPS Navi	21-1	Show Address	17-20
Property		Locate Me	21-1	Signature	17-21

Simple Input	17-21
Spam Filtering	17-23
S! Town	20-1
Saved Pages	18-4
Secret Mode	13-3
Secret Setting	
Security Code	
Select Linked Information	17-16
Sending Settings	
Confirmation Window	17-22
Delivery Check	17-22
Delivery Time	17-22
Expiry Time	17-22
Priority	
Sender Address	
Vibration	17-22
Sent Messages	
Auto-delete Setting	
Change Order	
Delete	
Display	
Rename Folder	
Sort Setting	
Server Certificates	
Server Mail	
Delete	
Forward	
Mail List	
Retrieve	17-19

Shortcut Menu	14-4
Access	
Delete	
Edit	
Set	
Signal Strength	
Signature	
Insert Signature	17-2
Register	
SMS	
Create/Send	17-9
Retrieve	
SMS Settings	
Delivery Check	17-2
Expiry Time	
Font Size	
Mail Type	17-2
Scroll Unit	
Signature	17-2
Soft Keys	x
Sound Effects	12-4
Sound Effects Volume	12-4
Sound Volume	12-4
Speaker Volume	12-4
Specifications	23-1
Speed Calling	4-1
SSL/TLS	18-2
Stereo Earphone-microphone	14-43
Auto Answer	14-4

Switch Unread/Read	17-18
Switch Callers	16-5
Sub Menu View	12-11
Storage Capacity	23-16
Set Phone Number	14-44
One-touch Calling	14-44
One-touch Answering	14-44

Т	
Tasks	14-27
Add	14-27
Alarm	14-28
Delete	14-30
Open	14-29
Tasks Lock	14-30
Text Browse	18-12
Text Conversion Functions	3-9
Conversion Prediction	3-10
Phrase Prediction	3-10
User Dictionary	3-11
Word Predictions	
Text Copy	17-13, 18-8
Text Entry	3-1
Input Mode Icons	3-1
Text Entry Modes	3-1
Icons	3-1
Key Assignment	3-2
Switch	

14-34	=
22-3	
22-3	2
22-3	0

USIM Card	1-1
Insert/Remove	1-2
V	

Unsent Message Box	17-11
Unsent Messages	17-17
Display	17-11
Edit/Send	17-17
Update Software	23-12
USB	
Cancel Data Transfer Mode	11-6
Charging	11-7
Dial-up Connections	
Set Data Transfer Mode	11-6
Transfer Data	11-6
Use Files	18-10
File Property	18-10
Play	

Save .......18-10 User Dictionary ......3-11 Edit ......3-11 Save ......3-11

Time Table .....14-31 Copy ......14-31

Delete ......14-31 Register ......14-31 Starting/Ending Time Setting ......14-32 Touch Tones ......14-42 Troubleshooting......23-10

V			
Vibration	12-4		
Video Calls	5-1		
Auto Answer	5-4		
External Display	12-7		
Hold Image	5-6		
Image Quality	5-4		
Incoming Call Image	12-6		
Loud Speaker			
Mute	5-2, 5-5		
Picture View	12-7		
Self-view	5-4		
Send Picture	5-4		
Speaker	5-5		
Speaker Volume	5-2		
Switch Display	5-3		
Zoom	5-3		
Voice Recorder	14-33		
During a call	2-5		
Play	14-33		
Record	14-33		
Select Storage	14-33		
Voicemail	16-3		

W		
Wallpaper Warranty		
Weather Indicator		
Check		
Update	22-3	
View Setting	22-3	
World Clock	14-34	
Daylight Saving Time	14-35	
Display	14-36	
GMT Offset	14-35	
Setting	14-34	
Switch Main City	14-35	
Υ		
Yahoo! Keitai	18-1	

# **Warranty & After Sales Service**

### Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

### Note

 SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

### **After Sales Service**

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 23-10) before submitting your handset for repair. If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

- Repair within warranty period
  - Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after warranty period
  - Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.
- \* During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.

### Note

- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair
  of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup
  copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba
  assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration
  of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings
  as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law.
   Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

### Tip

 If you have any inquiries with regards to the after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 23-31).

### **Customer Service**

If you have any questions about a SoftBank handset or service, please call General Information. For service or handset repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

### **SoftBank Customer Centers**

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

### SoftBank Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial

+81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number.

International charges will apply to this call.)

### Call These Numbers Toll Free from Fixed-Line Phones

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	<b>©</b> 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>(</b> a) 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	<b>©</b> 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>(</b> a) 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	<b>(</b> a) 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>(</b> a) 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	<b>(</b> a) 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	<b>6</b> 0088-250-113

# SoftBank 810T/811T/813T Instruction Manual

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

\* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 810T SoftBank 811T SoftBank 813T

Manufacturer: TOSHIBA CORPORATION



Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

<sup>\*</sup> Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.

<sup>\*</sup> Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.